

MIDSOUTH BANCORP INC  
Form 10-K  
March 16, 2018

UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
Washington, D.C. 20549  
FORM 10-K  
ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE  
SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934  
For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017  
Commission File number 1-11826

MIDSOUTH BANCORP, INC.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Louisiana 72-1020809

(State of Incorporation) (I.R.S. EIN Number)

102 Versailles Boulevard, Lafayette, Louisiana 70501

(Address of principal executive offices)

Registrant's telephone number, including area code: (337) 237-8343

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

| Title of each class | Name of each exchange on which registered |
|---------------------|---|
|---------------------|---|

|                               |                         |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Common Stock, \$.10 par value | New York Stock Exchange |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act: none

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act.

Yes No

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Act.

Yes No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files).

Yes  No

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers in response to Item 405 of Regulation S-K is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a nonaccelerated filer, smaller reporting company, or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company," and "emerging growth company," in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

|                         |                   |  |                           |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------|--|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| Large accelerated filer | Accelerated filer | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Nonaccelerated filer | Smaller reporting company | Emerging growth company |
|-------------------------|-------------------|--|---------------------------|-------------------------|

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Act.)

Yes No

The aggregate market value of the voting and nonvoting common equity held by nonaffiliates of the registrant at June 30, 2017 was approximately \$158,085,769 based upon the closing market price per share of the registrant's common

stock as reported on

---

The New York Stock Exchange, Inc. as of such date. As of March 16, 2018 there were 16,621,811 outstanding shares of MidSouth Bancorp, Inc. common stock.

**DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE**

Portions of the Company's Proxy Statement for its 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders are incorporated by reference into Part III of this Form 10-K.

---

MIDSOUTH BANCORP, INC.  
 2017 Annual Report on Form 10-K  
 TABLE OF CONTENTS

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <u>PART I</u>   | <u>7</u>  |
| <u>Item 1 - Business</u>  | <u>7</u>  |
| <u>Overview</u>   | <u>7</u>  |
| <u>Products and Services</u>  | <u>7</u>  |
| <u>Markets</u>  | <u>7</u>  |
| <u>Competition</u>  | <u>7</u>  |
| <u>Employees</u>  | <u>8</u>  |
| <u>Additional Information</u>   | <u>8</u>  |
| <u>Supervision and Regulation</u>   | <u>8</u>  |
| <u>Item 1A – Risk Factors</u>   | <u>16</u> |
| <u>Risks Relating to Our Business</u>   | <u>16</u> |
| <u>Risks Relating to an Investment in Our Common Stock</u>  | <u>23</u> |
| <u>Item 1B – Unresolved Staff Comments</u>  | <u>25</u> |
| <u>Item 2 - Properties</u>  | <u>25</u> |
| <u>Item 3 - Legal Proceedings</u>   | <u>26</u> |
| <u>Item 4 – Mine Safety Disclosures</u>   | <u>26</u> |
| <u>Executive Officers of the Registrant</u>   | <u>27</u> |
| <br>  |           |
| <u>PART II</u>  | <u>28</u> |
| <u>Item 5 - Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Shareholder Matters, and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities</u> | <u>28</u> |
| <u>Item 6 – Five Year Summary of Selected Financial Data</u>  | <u>30</u> |
| <u>Item 7 – Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</u>                         | <u>30</u> |
| <u>Overview</u>   | <u>30</u> |
| <u>Critical Accounting Policies</u>   | <u>31</u> |
| <u>Results of Operations</u>  | <u>32</u> |
| <u>Earnings Analysis</u>  | <u>33</u> |
| <u>Balance Sheet Analysis</u>   | <u>38</u> |
| <u>Impact of Inflation and Changing Prices</u>  | <u>49</u> |
| <u>Non-GAAP Financial Measures</u>  | <u>49</u> |
| <u>Item 7A – Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk</u>   | <u>51</u> |
| <u>Item 8 – Financial Statements and Supplementary Data</u>   | <u>52</u> |
| <u>Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements</u>   | <u>58</u> |
| 1. <u>SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES</u>  | <u>58</u> |
| 2. <u>INVESTMENT SECURITIES</u>   | <u>64</u> |
| 3. <u>LOANS</u>   | <u>68</u> |
| 4. <u>PREMISES AND EQUIPMENT</u>  | <u>77</u> |
| 5. <u>GOODWILL AND OTHER INTANGIBLE ASSETS</u>  | <u>77</u> |
| 6. <u>DEPOSITS</u>  | <u>78</u> |
| 7. <u>SECURITIES SOLD UNDER AGREEMENTS TO REPURCHASE</u>  | <u>78</u> |
| 8. <u>SHORT-TERM FEDERAL HOME LOAN BANK ADVANCES</u>  | <u>79</u> |
| 9. <u>LONG-TERM FEDERAL HOME LOAN BANK ADVANCES</u>   | <u>79</u> |
| 10. <u>JUNIOR SUBORDINATED DEBENTURES</u>   | <u>79</u> |
| 11. <u>COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES</u>  | <u>79</u> |

|                                 |           |
|---------------------------------|-----------|
| 12. <u>INCOME TAXES</u>         | <u>80</u> |
| 13. <u>EMPLOYEE BENEFITS</u>    | <u>81</u> |
| 14. <u>EMPLOYEE STOCK PLANS</u> | <u>82</u> |

---

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 15. <u>STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</u>   | <u>84</u>  |
| 16. <u>DERIVATIVES</u>  | <u>85</u>  |
| 17. <u>OTHER COMPREHENSIVE (LOSS) INCOME</u>  | <u>86</u>  |
| 18. <u>NET EARNINGS PER COMMON SHARE</u>  | <u>87</u>  |
| 19. <u>FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS WITH OFF-BALANCE SHEET RISK</u>  | <u>88</u>  |
| 20. <u>REGULATORY MATTERS</u>   | <u>88</u>  |
| 21. <u>FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENTS AND DISCLOSURES</u>  | <u>90</u>  |
| 22. <u>OTHER NON-INTEREST INCOME AND EXPENSE</u>  | <u>94</u>  |
| 23. <u>SUBSEQUENT EVENTS</u>  | <u>95</u>  |
| 24. <u>CONDENSED FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF PARENT COMPANY</u>  | <u>96</u>  |
| <u>Item 9 – Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure</u>            | <u>102</u> |
| <u>Item 9A – Controls and Procedures</u>  | <u>102</u> |
| <u>Item 9B – Other Information</u>  | <u>102</u> |
| <br>  |            |
| <u>PART III</u>   | <u>103</u> |
| <u>Item 10 - Directors, Executive Officers, and Corporate Governance</u>  | <u>103</u> |
| <u>Item 11 - Executive Compensation</u>   | <u>103</u> |
| <u>Item 12 - Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Shareholder Matters</u> | <u>103</u> |
| <u>Securities Authorized for Issuance under Equity Compensation Plans</u>                                       | <u>103</u> |
| <u>Item 13 - Certain Relationships and Related Transactions and Director Independence</u>                       | <u>104</u> |
| <u>Item 14 – Principal Accounting Fees and Services</u>   | <u>104</u> |
| <u>Item 15 - Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules</u>   | <u>104</u> |
| <u>Item 16 - Form 10-K Summary</u>  | <u>106</u> |

---

## CAUTIONARY NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

Certain statements included in this Report and the documents incorporated by reference herein, other than statements of historical fact, are forward-looking statements (as such term is defined in Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and the regulations thereunder), which are intended to be covered by the safe harbors created thereby. Forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to certain statements under the captions “Business,” “Risk Factors” and “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations.”

The words “anticipate,” “believe,” “estimate,” “expect,” “intend,” “may,” “plan,” “will,” “would,” “could,” “should,” “guidance,” “continue,” “project,” “forecast,” “confident,” and similar expressions are typically used to identify forward-looking statements. These statements are based on assumptions and assessments made by management in light of their experience and their perception of historical trends, current conditions, expected future developments and other factors they believe to be appropriate. Any forward-looking statements are not guarantees of our future performance and are subject to risks and uncertainties and may be affected by various factors that may cause actual results, developments and business decisions to differ materially from those in the forward-looking statements. Some of the factors that may cause actual results, developments and business decisions to differ materially from those contemplated by such forward-looking statements include the factors discussed under the caption “Risk Factors” and “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” in this Report and the following:

- changes in interest rates and market prices that could affect the net interest margin, asset valuation, and expense levels;
- changes in local economic and business conditions in the markets we serve, including, without limitation, changes related to the oil and gas industries that could adversely affect customers and their ability to repay borrowings under agreed upon terms, adversely affect the value of the underlying collateral related to their borrowings, and reduce demand for loans;
- increases in competitive pressure in the banking and financial services industries;
- increased competition for deposits and loans which could affect compositions, rates and terms;
- changes in the levels of prepayments received on loans and investment securities that adversely affect the yield and value of the earning assets;
- our ability to successfully implement and manage our recently announced strategic initiatives;
- costs and expenses associated with our strategic initiatives and possible changes in the size and components of the expected costs and charges associated with our strategic initiatives;
- our ability to realize the anticipated benefits and cost savings from our strategic initiatives within the anticipated time frame, if at all;
- the ability of our strategic initiatives to adequately address the concerns of the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency (the “OCC”) in its previous examination of us and the ability of the Company to comply with the terms of the formal agreement with the OCC;
- credit losses due to loan concentration, particularly our energy lending and commercial real estate portfolios;
- a deviation in actual experience from the underlying assumptions used to determine and establish our allowance for loan losses (“ALL”), which could result in greater than expected loan losses;
- the adequacy of the level of our ALL and the amount of loan loss provisions required in future periods including the impact of implementation of the new CECL (current expected credit loss) methodology;
- future examinations by our regulatory authorities, including the possibility that the regulatory authorities may, among other things, impose conditions on our operations or require us to increase our allowance for loan losses or write-down assets;
- changes in the availability of funds resulting from reduced liquidity or increased costs;
-

the timing and impact of future acquisitions or divestitures, the success or failure of integrating acquired operations, and the ability to capitalize on growth opportunities upon entering new markets;

the ability to acquire, operate, and maintain effective and efficient operating systems;

increased asset levels and changes in the composition of assets that would impact capital levels and regulatory capital ratios;

loss of critical personnel and the challenge of hiring qualified personnel at reasonable compensation levels;

legislative and regulatory changes, including the impact of regulations under the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act of 2010 and other changes in banking, securities and tax laws and regulations and their application by our regulators, changes in the scope and cost of FDIC insurance and other coverage;

---



regulations and restrictions resulting from our participation in government-sponsored programs such as the U.S. Treasury's Small Business Lending Fund, including potential retroactive changes in such programs; changes in accounting principles, policies, and guidelines applicable to financial holding companies and banking; increases in cybersecurity risk, including potential business disruptions or financial losses; acts of war, terrorism, cyber intrusion, weather, or other catastrophic events beyond our control; and the ability to manage the risks involved in the foregoing

We can give no assurance that any of the events anticipated by the forward-looking statements will occur or, if any of them does, what impact they will have on our results of operations and financial condition. We disclaim any intent or obligation to publicly update or revise any forward-looking statements, regardless of whether new information becomes available, future developments occur or otherwise.

---

## Part I

### Item 1 - Business

#### Overview

The Company was incorporated in 1984 as a Louisiana corporation and is a registered bank holding company headquartered in Lafayette, Louisiana. Its operations have been conducted primarily through its wholly owned bank subsidiary MidSouth Bank, N.A. The Bank, a national banking association, was chartered and commenced operations in 1985. As of December 31, 2017, the Bank operated through a network of 48 offices located in Louisiana and Texas.

Unless otherwise indicated or unless the context requires otherwise, all references in this report to “the Company,” “we,” “us,” “our,” or similar references, mean MidSouth Bancorp, Inc. and our subsidiaries, including our banking subsidiary, MidSouth Bank, N.A., on a consolidated basis. References to “MidSouth Bank” or the “Bank” mean our wholly owned banking subsidiary, MidSouth Bank, N.A.

#### Products and Services

The Bank is community oriented and focuses primarily on offering commercial and consumer loan and deposit services to small and middle market businesses, their owners and employees, and other individuals in our markets. Our community banking philosophy emphasizes personalized service and building broad customer relationships. Deposit products and services offered by the Bank include interest-bearing and noninterest-bearing checking accounts, investment accounts, cash management services, and electronic banking services, including remote deposit capturing services, internet banking, and debit and credit cards. Most of the Bank’s deposit accounts are FDIC-insured up to the maximum allowed, and the Bank customers have access to a world-wide ATM network of more than 55,000 surcharge-free ATMs.

Loans offered by the Bank include commercial and industrial loans, commercial real estate loans (both owner-occupied and non-owner occupied), other loans secured by real estate and consumer loans.

We are committed to an exceptional level of customer care. We maintain our own in-house call center so that customers enjoy live interaction with employees of the Bank rather than an automated telephone system. Additionally, we provide our employees with the training and technological tools to improve customer care. We also conduct focus groups within the communities we serve and strive to create a two-way dialog to ensure that we are offering the banking products and services that our customers and communities need.

#### Markets

We operate in Louisiana and central and east Texas along the Interstate 10, Interstate 49, Highway 90, Interstate 45, Interstate 20 and Interstate 35 corridors. As of December 31, 2017, our market area in Louisiana included 35 offices and is bound by Lafourche Parish to the south, East Baton Rouge Parish to the east, Caddo Parish to the north and Calcasieu Parish to the west. Our market areas in Texas include 13 offices located in the Beaumont, Houston, Conroe, Magnolia, College Station, Texarkana, Tyler and Dallas areas. For additional information regarding our properties, see Item 2 – Properties of this Report.

Oil and gas is the key industry within our markets. However, medical, technology and research companies continue to develop within these markets thereby diversifying the economy. Additionally, numerous major universities located within our market areas, including Louisiana State University, University of Houston, Rice University, Texas A&M

University and University of Louisiana at Lafayette, provide a substantial number of jobs and help to contribute to the educated work force within our markets.

#### Competition

We face strong competition in our market areas from both traditional and nontraditional financial services providers, such as commercial banks; savings banks; credit unions; finance companies; mortgage, leasing, and insurance companies; money market mutual funds; brokerage houses; and branches that provide credit facilities. Several of the financial services competitors in our market areas are substantially larger and have far greater resources; however, we have effectively competed by building long-term customer relationships. Customer loyalty has been built through our continued focus on quality customer care enhanced by technology and effective delivery systems.

- 7 -

---

Other factors, including economic, legislative, and technological changes, also impact our competitive environment. Management continually evaluates competitive challenges in the financial services industry and develops appropriate responses consistent with our overall market strategy.

### Employees

As of December 31, 2017, the Bank employed approximately 467 full-time equivalent employees. The Company had no employees who are not also employees of the Bank. Through the Bank, employees receive customary employee benefits, which include an employee stock ownership plan; a 401(K) plan; and life, health and disability insurance plans. Our directors, officers, and employees are important to the success of the Company and play a key role in business development by actively participating in the communities served by the Company. The Company considers the relationship of the Bank with its employees as a whole to be good.

### Additional Information

More information on the Company and the Bank is available on the Bank's website at [www.midsouthbank.com](http://www.midsouthbank.com). The Company is not incorporating by reference into this Report the information contained on its website; therefore, the content of the website is not a part of this Report. Copies of this Report and other reports filed or furnished by the Company pursuant to Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, including exhibits, are available free of charge on the Company's website under the "Investor Relations" link as soon as reasonably practicable after they have been filed or furnished electronically to the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC"). Copies of these filings may also be obtained free of charge on the SEC's website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov).

### Supervision and Regulation

Under Federal Reserve policy, we are expected to act as a source of financial strength for, and to commit resources to support, the Bank. This support may be required at times when, absent such Federal Reserve policy, we may not be inclined to provide such support. In addition, any capital loans by a bank holding company to any of its banking subsidiaries are subordinate in right of payment to deposits and to certain other indebtedness of such subsidiary banks. In the event of a bank holding company's bankruptcy, any commitment by a bank holding company to a federal bank regulatory agency to maintain the capital of a banking subsidiary will be assumed by the bankruptcy trustee and entitled to a priority of payment.

### Troubled Condition and Written Agreement

On December 27, 2017, the Company was informed in writing by the Federal Reserve Bank of Atlanta ("FRB Atlanta") that the FRB Atlanta has determined that the Company is in "troubled condition" for purposes of Section 225.71 of Regulation Y. Based on the troubled condition determination, the Company (1) must notify the FRB Atlanta prior to adding or replacing a member of its board of directors or employing, or changing the responsibilities of, any senior executive officer, and (2) may not, except under certain circumstances, enter into any agreements to make severance or indemnification payments or make any such payments to "institution-affiliated parties" as defined in the regulations.

On June 8, 2017, the Bank was informed by the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency ("OCC") that the OCC has determined that the Bank is in "troubled condition" for purposes of 12 C.F.R. 5.51, Changes in Directors and Senior Executive Officers, which implements the provisions of Section 914 of the Financial Institutions Reform, Recovery, and Enforcement Act of 1989, 12 U.S.C. 1831i, and, as a result, the Bank is subject to specified restrictions on its operations. The OCC's determination was based on deficiencies identified in its examination of the Bank, including but not limited to deficiencies in asset quality, credit administration and strategic planning. Based on the troubled condition determination, the Bank is now subject to the following restrictions on its operations: (1) the Bank must seek approval from the OCC prior to adding or replacing a member of its board of directors, or employing, or

changing the responsibilities of any senior executive officer, and (2) the Bank may not, except under certain circumstances, enter into any agreements to make severance or indemnification payments or make any such payments to “institution-affiliated parties” as defined in the regulations.

On July 19, 2017, the Bank entered into a formal written agreement with the OCC that provides, among other things, that the Bank: (i) create a committee to monitor the Bank’s compliance with the Agreement and make quarterly reports to the Board of Directors and the OCC; (ii) adopt and implement a three-year strategic plan for the Bank consistent with regulatory guidance and to be reviewed and updated on at least an annual basis by the Board of Directors; (iii) protect its interests in its criticized assets (those assets classified as “doubtful,” “substandard,” or “special mention” by internal or external loan review or examination), and adopt and implement a written program designed to eliminate the basis of criticism of criticized assets equal

to or exceeding \$250,000, which shall be reviewed and, as necessary, revised, on a quarterly basis; (iv) may not extend additional credit to any borrower with an aggregate outstanding loan balance of \$250,000 that is a criticized asset unless approved and deemed by the Bank's Board of Directors to be necessary to promote the best interests of the Bank and will not compromise the Bank's written program with respect to such loans; (v) develop and implement a written program to improve the Bank's loan portfolio management and provide the Board of Directors with written reports on the Bank's loan portfolio to enhance problem loan identification; (vi) review and, as necessary, revise the Bank's loan review program to ensure the timely identification and categorization of problem credits consistent with regulatory guidance; (vii) adopt and implement certain enhancements to its policies and procedures relating to its ALLL and the methodology related thereto; and (viii) revise its internal audit program to ensure Bank adherence to an independent and comprehensive internal audit program.

#### Regulatory Reform

The financial crisis of 2008, including the downturn of global economic, financial and money markets and the threat of collapse of numerous financial institutions, and other recent events have led to the adoption of numerous new laws and regulations that apply to, and focus on, financial institutions. The most significant of these new laws is the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act (the "Dodd-Frank Act"), which was adopted on July 21, 2010 and, in part, is intended to implement significant structural reforms to the financial services industry. The Dodd-Frank Act is discussed in more detail below.

#### Bank Holding Companies

Historically, the activities of bank holding companies were limited to the business of banking and activities closely related or incidental to banking. Bank holding companies were generally prohibited from acquiring control of any company that was not a bank and from engaging in any business other than the business of banking or managing and controlling banks. The Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, which took effect on March 12, 2000, dismantled many Depression-era restrictions against affiliation between banking, securities and insurance firms by permitting bank holding companies to engage in a broader range of financial activities, so long as certain safeguards are observed. Specifically, bank holding companies may elect to become "financial holding companies" that may affiliate with securities firms and insurance companies and engage in other activities that are financial in nature or incidental to a financial activity.

We elected to become a financial holding company in November 2012. However, related to the regulatory issues discussed above under "Troubled Condition and Written Agreement," we decertified as a financial holding company in November 2017. We remain a bank holding company under the Federal Bank Holding Company Act.

#### Dodd-Frank Act

In July 2010, the Dodd-Frank Act was signed into law. The Dodd-Frank Act implemented far-reaching changes across the financial regulatory landscape, including changes that have affected all bank holding companies and banks, including us and the Bank, including the following provisions:

**Insurance of Deposit Accounts.** The Dodd-Frank Act changed the assessment base for federal deposit insurance from the amount of insured deposits to consolidated assets less tangible capital. The Dodd-Frank Act also made permanent the \$250,000 limit for federal deposit insurance and increased the cash limit of Securities Investor Protection Corporation protection from \$100,000 to \$250,000.

**Payment of Interest on Demand Deposits.** The Dodd-Frank Act repealed the federal prohibitions on the payment of interest on demand deposits, thereby permitting depository institutions to pay interest on business transaction and other accounts.

**Creation of the Consumer Financial Protection Bureau.** The Dodd-Frank Act centralized significant aspects of consumer financial protection by creating a new agency, the Consumer Financial Protection Bureau (the "CFPB"), which is discussed in more detail below.

Debit Card Interchange Fees. The Dodd-Frank Act amended the Electronic Fund Transfer Act to, among other things, require that debit card interchange fees be reasonable and proportional to the actual cost incurred by the issuer with respect to the transaction. In June 2011, the Federal Reserve Board adopted regulations setting the maximum permissible interchange fee as the sum of 21 cents per transaction and 5 basis points multiplied by the value of the transaction, with an additional adjustment of up to one cent per transaction if the issuer implements additional fraud-prevention standards. Although issuers that have assets of less than \$10 billion are exempt from the Federal Reserve Board's regulations that set maximum interchange fees, these regulations could significantly impact the interchange fees that financial institutions with less than \$10 billion in assets, such as the Bank, are able to collect.

In addition, the Dodd-Frank Act implements other far-reaching changes to the financial regulatory landscape, including provisions that:

- 9 -

---

- restrict the preemption of state law by federal law and disallow subsidiaries and affiliates of national banks from availing themselves of such preemption;
- impose comprehensive regulation of the over-the-counter derivatives market, subject to significant rulemaking processes, which would include certain provisions that would effectively prohibit insured depository institutions from conducting certain derivatives businesses in the institution itself;
- require depository institutions with total consolidated assets of more than \$10 billion to conduct regular stress tests and require large, publicly traded bank holding companies to create a risk committee responsible for the oversight of enterprise risk management;
- require loan originators to retain 5% of any loan sold or securitized, unless it is a “qualified residential mortgage,” subject to certain exceptions;
- prohibit banks and their affiliates from engaging in proprietary trading and investing in and sponsoring certain unregistered investment companies (the Volcker Rule); and
- implement corporate governance revisions that apply to all public companies, not just financial institutions.

While much of the Dodd-Frank Act has been implemented in the form of final rules from the banking agencies, the full extent of the impact such requirements will have on our operations continues to be unclear. In addition, the current administration in the U.S. has added further uncertainty as to the implementation, scope and timing of additional rules implementing the Dodd-Frank Act, and it is possible that existing rules may be modified or repealed. The changes resulting from the Dodd-Frank Act may impact the profitability of our business activities, require changes to certain aspects of our business practices, impose upon us more stringent capital, liquidity and leverage requirements or otherwise adversely affect our business. These changes may also require us to invest significant management attention and resources to evaluate and make any changes necessary to comply with new statutory and regulatory requirements. Failure to comply with the new requirements may negatively impact our results of operations and financial condition. While we cannot predict what effect any presently contemplated or future changes in the laws or regulations or their interpretations would have on us, these changes could be materially adverse to us and our investors, even if only in the short-term.

#### Capital Requirements

We are subject to various regulatory capital requirements administered by the Federal Reserve and the OCC. Failure to meet minimum capital requirements could result in certain mandatory and possible additional discretionary actions by regulators that, if undertaken, could have a direct material effect on our financial statements. Under capital adequacy guidelines and the regulatory framework for prompt corrective action (described below), we must meet specific capital guidelines that involve quantitative measures of our assets, liabilities, and certain off-balance sheet items as calculated under regulatory accounting policies. Our capital amounts and classification are also subject to judgments by the regulators regarding qualitative components, risk weightings, and other factors. For further detail on capital and capital ratios, see the discussion under Part II, Item 7, “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations.”

#### Basel III Capital Framework

The federal bank regulatory agencies have adopted rules to implement the Basel III capital framework as outlined by the Basel Committee on Banking Supervision and standards for calculating risk-weighted assets and risk-based capital measurements (collectively, the “Basel III Final Rules”). For purposes of these capital rules, (i) common equity Tier 1 capital (“CET1”) consists principally of common stock (including surplus) and retained earnings; (ii) Tier 1 capital consists principally of CET1 plus non-cumulative preferred stock and related surplus, and certain grandfathered cumulative preferred stock and trust preferred securities; and (iii) Tier 2 capital consists principally of Tier 1 capital plus qualifying subordinated debt and preferred stock, and limited amounts of an institution’s allowance for loan losses. Each regulatory capital classification is subject to certain adjustments and limitations, as implemented by the



Basel III Final Rules. The Basel III Final Rules also establish risk weightings that are applied to many classes of assets held by community banks, including, importantly, applying higher risk weightings to certain commercial real estate loans. The Company and the Bank are subject to the Basel III capital ratios.

The Basel III Final Rules were effective on January 1, 2015, and the Basel III Final Rules' capital conservation buffer (as described below) is being phased in beginning January 1, 2016 through 2019. When fully phased in, the Basel III Final Rules require banks to maintain (i) a minimum ratio of CET1 to risk-weighted assets of at least 4.5%, plus a 2.5% "capital conservation buffer" (which is added to the 4.5% CET1 ratio as that buffer is phased in, effectively resulting in a minimum ratio of CET1 to risk-weighted assets of at least 7%), (ii) a minimum ratio of Tier 1 capital to risk-weighted assets of at least 6.0%, plus the capital conservation buffer (which is added to the 6.0% Tier 1 capital ratio as that buffer is phased in, effectively resulting in a minimum Tier 1 capital ratio of 8.5% upon full implementation), (iii) a minimum ratio of total (that is, Tier 1 plus Tier 2) capital to risk-

- 10 -

---

weighted assets of at least 8.0%, plus the capital conservation buffer (which is added to the 8.0% total capital ratio as that buffer is phased in, effectively resulting in a minimum total capital ratio of 10.5% upon full implementation) and (iv) a minimum leverage ratio of 4%, calculated as the ratio of Tier 1 capital to balance sheet exposures plus certain off-balance sheet exposures (computed as the average for each quarter of the month-end ratios for the quarter).

The Basel III Final Rules provide deductions from and adjustments to regulatory capital measures, and primarily to CET1, including deductions and adjustments that were not applied to reduce CET1 under historical regulatory capital rules. For example, mortgage servicing rights, deferred tax assets dependent upon future taxable income and significant investments in non-consolidated financial entities must be deducted from CET1 to the extent that any one such category exceeds 10% of CET1 or all such categories in the aggregate exceed 15% of CET1. These deductions from and adjustments to regulatory capital are generally subject to a phase in period, which began in 2015 and will continue through 2018.

The Basel III Final Rules also implement a “countercyclical capital buffer,” generally designed to absorb losses during periods of economic stress and to be imposed when national regulators determine that excess aggregate credit growth becomes associated with a buildup of systemic risk. This buffer is a CET1 add-on to the capital conservation buffer in the range of 0% to 2.5% when fully implemented (potentially resulting in total buffers of between 2.5% and 5%).

In addition, the OCC has established higher individual minimum capital ratios for the Bank. Specifically, the Bank must maintain a Tier 1 leverage ratio of at least 8%, and a total risk-based capital ratio of at least 12%.

At December 31, 2017, our CET1 to risk-weighted assets ratio was 12.10%, our Tier 1 Capital to risk-weighted assets ratio was 16.51%, our Total Capital to risk-weighted assets ratio was 17.77% and our Leverage Ratio was 12.53%. Since our total consolidated assets are below \$15 billion, our \$21.5 million aggregate principal amount of trust preferred securities issued prior to May 19, 2011, are included in our Tier 1 and Total Capital calculations.

#### The Volcker Rule

The Dodd-Frank Act required the federal bank regulatory agencies to adopt rules that prohibit banks and their affiliates from engaging in proprietary trading and investing in and sponsoring certain unregistered investment companies (defined as hedge funds and private equity funds). The statutory provision is commonly called the “Volcker Rule.” On December 10, 2013, the Federal Reserve and other federal agencies issued final rules to implement the Volcker Rule. In relevant part, these final rules would have prohibited banking entities from owning collateralized debt obligations (CDOs) backed by trust preferred securities (TruPS), effective July 21, 2015. However, subsequent to these final rules the U.S. financial regulatory agencies issued an interim rule to exempt CDOs backed by TruPS from the Volcker Rule and the final rule, provided that (a) the CDO was established prior to May 19, 2010, (b) the banking entity reasonably believes that the CDO’s offering proceeds were used to invest primarily in TruPS issued by banks with less than \$15 billion in assets, and (iii) the banking entity acquired the CDO investment on or before December 10, 2013. At December 31, 2017, we did not have any CDOs backed by TruPS.

#### The Durbin Amendment

The Dodd-Frank Act included provisions which restrict interchange fees to those which are “reasonable and proportionate” for certain debit card issuers, and limit the ability of networks and issuers to restrict debit card transaction routing. This statutory provision is known as the “Durbin Amendment.” The Federal Reserve issued final rules implementing the Durbin Amendment on June 29, 2011. In the final rules, interchange fees for debit card transactions were capped at \$0.21 plus five basis points in order to be eligible for a safe harbor such that the fee is conclusively determined to be reasonable and proportionate. Another related rule also permits an additional \$0.01 per transaction “fraud prevention adjustment” to the interchange fee if certain Federal Reserve standards are implemented, including an annual review of fraud prevention policies and procedures. With respect to network exclusivity and merchant routing restrictions, it is now required that all debit cards participate in at least two

unaffiliated networks so that the transactions initiated using those debit cards will have at least two independent routing channels. While the interchange fee restrictions contained in the Durbin Amendment, and the rules promulgated thereunder, only apply to debit card issuers with \$10 billion or more in total consolidated assets, these regulations could significantly affect the interchange fees that financial institutions with less than \$10 billion in assets, including the Bank, are able to collect.

#### Prompt Corrective Action

The Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation Improvement Act of 1991 (“FDICIA”) established a system of prompt corrective action to resolve the problems of undercapitalized institutions. Under this system, the federal banking regulators have established five capital categories (well capitalized, adequately capitalized, undercapitalized, significantly undercapitalized and critically undercapitalized) and are required to take certain mandatory supervisory actions, and are authorized to take other discretionary actions, with respect to institutions in the three undercapitalized categories. The severity of the action will depend upon the

- 11 -

---

capital category in which the institution is placed. Generally, subject to a narrow exception, the banking regulator must appoint a receiver or conservator for an institution that is critically undercapitalized. The federal banking agencies have set the relevant capital level for each category.

An institution that is categorized as undercapitalized, significantly undercapitalized, or critically undercapitalized is required to submit an acceptable capital restoration plan to its appropriate federal regulatory agency. A bank holding company must guarantee that a subsidiary depository institution meets its capital restoration plan, subject to certain limitations. The controlling holding company's obligation to fund a capital restoration plan is limited to the lesser of 5.0% of an undercapitalized subsidiary's assets or the amount required to meet regulatory capital requirements. An undercapitalized institution is also generally prohibited from increasing its average total assets, making acquisitions, establishing any branches or engaging in any new line of business, except under an accepted capital restoration plan or with FDIC approval. In addition, the appropriate federal regulatory agency may treat an undercapitalized institution in the same manner as it treats a significantly undercapitalized institution if it determines that those actions are necessary.

At December 31, 2017, the Bank had the requisite capital level to qualify as “well capitalized” under the regulatory framework for prompt corrective action.

#### Insurance of Accounts and FDIC Insurance Assessments

The Bank's deposits are insured by the Deposit Insurance Fund (the “DIF”) of the FDIC up to the standard maximum insurance amount for each deposit insurance ownership category. Since January 1, 2013, the basic limit on FDIC deposit insurance coverage has been \$250,000 per depositor. Under the FDIA, the FDIC may terminate deposit insurance upon a finding that the institution has engaged in unsafe and unsound practices, is in an unsafe or unsound condition to continue operations, or has violated any applicable law, regulation, rule, order or condition imposed by the FDIC, subject to administrative and potential judicial hearing and review processes.

The DIF is funded by assessments on banks and other depository institutions. As required by the Dodd-Frank Act, in February 2011, the FDIC approved a final rule that changed the assessment base for DIF assessments from domestic deposits to average consolidated total assets minus average tangible equity (defined as Tier 1 capital). In addition, as also required by the Dodd-Frank Act, the FDIC has adopted a new large-bank pricing assessment scheme, set a current target “designated reserve ratio” (described in more detail below) of 2% for the DIF, and established a lower assessment rate schedule when the reserve ratio reaches 1.15% and, in lieu of dividends, provides for a lower assessment rate schedule when the reserve ratio reaches 2% and 2.5%.

An institution's assessment rate depends upon the institution's assigned risk category, which is based on supervisory evaluations, regulatory capital levels and certain other factors. Initial base assessment rates ranged from 2.5 to 45 basis points. The FDIC may make the following further adjustments to an institution's initial base assessment rates: decreases for long-term unsecured debt, including most senior unsecured debt and subordinated debt; increases for holding long-term unsecured debt or subordinated debt issued by other insured depository institutions; and increases for broker deposits in excess of 10% of domestic deposits for insurances not well rated and well capitalized. As of December 31, 2017, our risk category required a quarterly payment of approximately 8.52 basis points per \$100 of assessable deposits.

The Dodd-Frank Act transferred to the FDIC increased discretion with regard to managing the required amount of reserves for the DIF, or the “designated reserve ratio.” Among other changes, the Dodd-Frank Act (i) raised the minimum designated reserve ratio to 1.35 % and removed the upper limit on the designated reserve ratio, (ii) requires that the reserve ratio reach 1.35 % by September 2020, and (iii) requires the FDIC to offset the effect on institutions with total consolidated assets of less than \$10 billion of raising the reserve ratio from 1.15% to 1.35% which requirement was met by rules adopted by the FDIC during 2016. On June 30, 2016, the reserve ratio rose to 1.17%,

which triggered three major changes to deposit insurance assessments beginning for the third quarter of 2016: (i) the range of initial assessment rates for all institutions declined from 5 to 35 basis points to 3 to 30 basis points (which are included in the total base assessment rates in the above paragraph); (ii) surcharges equal to an annual rate of 4.5 basis points began for insured depository institutions with total consolidated assets of \$10 billion or more; and (iii) the revised assessment method described above was implemented. The FDIA requires that the FDIC consider the appropriate level for the designated reserve ratio on at least an annual basis. At June 30, 2017, the reserve ratio was 1.24%. The FDIC has adopted a DIF restoration plan to ensure that the fund reserve ratio reaches 1.35% by September 30, 2020, as required by the Dodd-Frank Act.

Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses

- 12 -

---

The Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses (the “ALLL”) represents one of the most significant estimates in the Bank’s financial statements and regulatory reports. Because of its significance, the Bank has established a system by which it develops, maintains, and documents a comprehensive, systematic, and consistently applied process for determining the amounts of the ALLL and the provision for loan and lease losses. The Interagency Policy Statement on the ALLL encourages all banks and federal savings institutions to ensure controls are in place to consistently determine the ALLL in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States, the federal savings association’s stated policies and procedures, management’s best judgment and relevant supervisory guidance. The Bank’s estimate of credit losses reflects consideration of significant factors that affect the collectibility of the portfolio as of the evaluation date.

#### Safety and Soundness Standards

The Federal Deposit Insurance Act, as amended by the FDICIA and the Riegle Community Development and Regulatory Improvement Act of 1994, requires the federal bank regulatory agencies to prescribe standards, by regulations or guidelines, relating to internal controls, information systems and internal audit systems, loan documentation, credit underwriting, interest rate risk exposure, asset growth, asset quality, earnings, stock valuation and compensation, fees and benefits, and such other operational and managerial standards as the agencies deem appropriate. The federal bank regulatory agencies have adopted a set of guidelines prescribing safety and soundness standards pursuant to FDICIA, as amended. The guidelines establish general standards relating to internal controls and information systems, internal audit systems, loan documentation, credit underwriting, interest rate exposure, asset growth and compensation and fees and benefits. In general, the guidelines require, among other things, appropriate systems and practices to identify and manage the risks and exposures specified in the guidelines. The guidelines prohibit excessive compensation as an unsafe and unsound practice and describe compensation as excessive when the amounts paid are unreasonable or disproportionate to the services performed by an executive officer, employee, director, or principal shareholder. In addition, the agencies adopted regulations that authorize, but do not require, an agency to order an institution that has been given notice by an agency that it is not satisfying any of such safety and soundness standards to submit a compliance plan. If, after being so notified, an institution fails to submit an acceptable compliance plan or fails in any material respect to implement an acceptable compliance plan, the agency must issue an order directing action to correct the deficiency and may issue an order directing other actions of the types to which an undercapitalized institution is subject under the “prompt corrective action” provisions of FDICIA. See “Prompt Corrective Action” above. If an institution fails to comply with such an order, the agency may seek to enforce such order in judicial proceedings and to impose civil money penalties. The federal regulatory agencies also proposed guidelines for asset quality and earnings standards.

#### Interagency Appraisal and Evaluation Guidelines

In December 2010, the federal banking agencies issued the Interagency Appraisal and Evaluation Guidelines. This guidance, which updated guidance originally issued in 1994, sets forth the minimum regulatory standards for appraisals. It incorporates previous regulatory issuances affecting appraisals, addresses advances in information technology used in collateral evaluation, and clarifies standards for use of analytical methods and technological tools in developing evaluations. This guidance also requires institutions to utilize strong internal controls to ensure reliable appraisals and evaluations and to monitor and periodically update valuations of collateral for existing real estate loans and transactions.

#### Community Reinvestment Act

Under the Community Reinvestment Act (“CRA”), the Bank has an obligation to help meet the credit needs of the entire community, including low- and moderate-income neighborhoods, consistent with safe and sound banking practices. The CRA requires the appropriate federal regulator, in connection with its examination of an insured institution, to assess the institution's record of meeting the credit needs of its community and to take such record into account in its evaluation of certain applications, such as applications for a merger or the establishment of a branch. An unsatisfactory rating may be used as the basis for the denial of an application by the federal banking regulator.

The Bank received a satisfactory rating in its most recent CRA examination.

#### Restrictions on Transactions with Affiliates

We are subject to the provisions of Section 23A of the Federal Reserve Act. Section 23A places limits on: the amount of a bank's loans or extensions of credit to affiliates; a bank's investment in affiliates; assets a bank may purchase from affiliates, except for real and personal property exempted by the Federal Reserve; the amount of loans or extensions of credit to third parties collateralized by the securities or obligations of affiliates; and a bank's guarantee, acceptance or letter of credit issued on behalf of an affiliate.

The total permitted amount of the above transactions is limited in amount, as to any one affiliate, to 10.0% of a bank's capital and surplus and, as to all affiliates combined, to 20.0% of a bank's capital and surplus. In addition to the limitation on the amount

- 13 -

---

of these transactions, each of the above transactions must also meet specified collateral requirements. The Bank must also comply with other provisions designed to avoid the taking of low-quality assets.

We are also subject to the provisions of Section 23B of the Federal Reserve Act which, among other things, prohibit an institution from engaging in the above transactions with affiliates unless the transactions are on terms substantially the same, or at least as favorable to the institution or its subsidiaries, as those prevailing at the time for comparable transactions with nonaffiliated companies.

The Dodd-Frank Act changed the definition of “covered transaction” in Sections 23A and 23B and limitations on asset purchases from insiders. With respect to the definition of “covered transaction,” the Dodd-Frank Act defines that term to include the acceptance of debt obligations issued by an affiliate as collateral for a bank’s loan or extension of credit to another person or company. In addition, a “derivative transaction” with an affiliate is now deemed to be a “covered transaction” to the extent that such a transaction causes a bank or its subsidiary to have a credit exposure to the affiliate. The Dodd-Frank Act also provides that the Bank may not “purchase an asset from, or sell an asset to” a Bank insider (or their related interests) unless (1) the transaction is conducted on market terms, and (2) if the proposed transaction represents more than 10% of the capital stock and surplus of the Bank, it has been approved in advance by a majority of the Bank’s non-interested directors.

The Bank is also subject to restrictions on extensions of credit to its executive officers, directors, principal stockholders and their related interests. These extensions of credit must be made on substantially the same terms, including interest rates and collateral, as those prevailing at the time for comparable transactions with third parties, and must not involve more than the normal risk of repayment or present other unfavorable features.

#### Incentive Compensation

The Federal Reserve, the OCC and the FDIC have issued regulatory guidance (the “Incentive Compensation Guidance”) intended to ensure that the incentive compensation policies of banking organizations do not undermine the safety and soundness of such organizations by encouraging excessive risk-taking. The Federal Reserve reviews, as part of the regular, risk-focused examination process, the incentive compensation arrangements of banking organizations, such as the Company, that are not “large, complex banking organizations.” The findings are included in reports of examination, and deficiencies are incorporated into the organization’s supervisory ratings. Enforcement actions may be taken against a banking organization if its incentive compensation arrangements, or related risk-management control or governance processes, pose a risk to the organization's safety and soundness and the organization is not taking prompt and effective measures to correct the deficiencies.

The Dodd-Frank Act requires the SEC and the federal bank regulatory agencies to establish joint regulations or guidelines that require financial institutions with assets of at least \$1 billion to disclose the structure of their incentive compensation practices and prohibit such institutions from maintaining compensation arrangements that encourage inappropriate risk-taking by providing excessive compensation, or that could lead to material financial loss to the financial institution. The SEC and federal bank regulatory agencies re-proposed regulations in 2016 (initially proposed in 2011) and previously issued guidance on sound incentive compensation policies, but have not yet finalized any regulations. If these or other regulations are adopted in a form similar to that initially proposed, they will impose limitations on the manner in which we may structure compensation for our executives. These proposed regulations incorporate the three principles discussed in the Incentive Compensation Guidance.

#### USA Patriot Act of 2001

In October 2001, the USA Patriot Act of 2001 (the “Patriot Act”) was enacted in response to the terrorist attacks in New York, Pennsylvania, and Washington, D.C. that occurred on September 11, 2001. The Patriot Act impacts financial institutions in particular through its anti-money laundering and financial transparency laws. The Patriot Act amended the Bank Secrecy Act and the rules and regulations of the Office of Foreign Assets Control to establish regulations



which, among others, set standards for identifying customers who open an account and promote cooperation with law enforcement agencies and regulators in order to effectively identify parties that may be associated with, or involved in, terrorist activities or money laundering.

Privacy

Financial institutions are required to disclose their policies for collecting and protecting confidential information. Customers generally may prevent financial institutions from sharing personal financial information with nonaffiliated third parties except for third parties that market the institutions' own products and services.

Additionally, financial institutions generally may not disclose consumer account numbers to any nonaffiliated third party for use in telemarketing, direct mail marketing or other marketing through electronic mail to consumers. The Bank has established

- 14 -

---

policies and procedures designed to safeguard its customers' personal financial information and to ensure compliance with applicable privacy laws.

#### Consumer Protection

The Dodd-Frank Act created the CFPB, a federal regulatory agency that is responsible for implementing, examining and enforcing compliance with federal consumer financial laws for institutions with more than \$10 billion of assets and, to a lesser extent, smaller institutions. The Dodd-Frank Act gives the CFPB authority to supervise and regulate providers of consumer financial products and services, establishes the CFPB's power to act against unfair, deceptive or abusive practices, and gives the CFPB rulemaking authority in connection with numerous federal consumer financial protection laws (for example, but not limited to, the Truth-in-Lending Act and the Real Estate Settlement Procedures Act).

As a smaller institution (i.e., with assets of \$10 billion or less), most consumer protection aspects of the Dodd-Frank Act will continue to be applied to the Company by the Federal Reserve and to the Bank by the OCC. However, the CFPB may include its own examiners in regulatory examinations by a smaller institution's prudential regulators and may require smaller institutions to comply with certain CFPB reporting requirements. In addition, regulatory positions taken by the CFPB and administrative and legal precedents established by CFPB enforcement activities, including in connection with supervision of larger bank holding companies, could influence how the Federal Reserve and OCC apply consumer protection laws and regulations to financial institutions that are not directly supervised by the CFPB. The precise impact of the CFPB's consumer protection activities cannot be forecasted.

#### Cybersecurity

The federal banking agencies have adopted guidelines for establishing information security standards and cybersecurity programs for implementing safeguards under the supervision of a financial institution's board of directors. These guidelines, along with related regulatory materials, increasingly focus on risk management and processes related to information technology and the use of third parties in the provision of financial products and services. The federal banking agencies expect financial institutions to establish lines of defense and to ensure that their risk management processes also address the risk posed by compromised customer credentials, and also expect financial institutions to maintain sufficient business continuity planning processes to ensure rapid recovery, resumption and maintenance of the institution's operations after a cyber attack. If the Company or the Bank fails to meet the expectations set forth in this regulatory guidance, the Company or the Bank could be subject to various regulatory actions and any remediation efforts may require significant resources of the Company or the Bank.

In October 2016, the federal banking agencies issued proposed rules on enhanced cybersecurity risk-management and resilience standards that would apply to very large financial institutions and to services provided by third parties to these institutions. The comment period for these proposed rules has closed and a final rule has not been published. Although the proposed rules would apply only to bank holding companies and banks with \$50 billion or more in total consolidated assets, these rules could influence the federal banking agencies' expectations and supervisory requirements for information security standards and cybersecurity programs of smaller financial institutions, such as the Company and the Bank.

#### Stress Testing

As required by the Dodd-Frank Act, the federal banking agencies have implemented stress testing requirements for certain financial institutions, including bank holding companies and state chartered banks, with more than \$10 billion in total consolidated assets. Although these requirements do not apply to institutions with less than \$10 billion in total consolidated assets, the federal banking agencies emphasize that all banking organizations, regardless of size, should have the capacity to analyze the potential impact of adverse market conditions or outcomes on the organization's financial condition. Based on existing regulatory guidance, the Company and the Bank will be expected to consider the institution's interest rate risk management, commercial real estate concentrations and other credit-related

information, and funding and liquidity management during this analysis of adverse outcomes.

#### Other Regulations

Interest and other charges collected or contracted for by the Bank are subject to federal laws concerning interest rates. The Bank's loan operations are also subject to federal laws applicable to credit transactions, such as the:

Federal Truth-In-Lending Act, governing disclosures of credit terms to consumer borrowers;  
Home Mortgage Disclosure Act, requiring financial institutions to provide information to enable the public and public officials to determine whether a financial institution is fulfilling its obligation to help meet the housing needs of the community it serves;

- 15 -

---

Equal Credit Opportunity Act, prohibiting discrimination on the basis of race, creed, or other prohibited factors in extending credit;

- Fair Credit Reporting Act, governing the use and provision of information to credit reporting agencies; and

rules and regulations of the various federal agencies charged with the responsibility of implementing these federal laws.

The deposit operations of the Bank are subject to the following:

- the Right to Financial Privacy Act, which imposes a duty to maintain confidentiality of consumer financial records and prescribes procedures for complying with administrative subpoenas of financial records;
- the Electronic Funds Transfer Act and Regulation E issued by the Federal Reserve to implement that act, which govern automatic deposits to and withdrawals from deposit accounts and customers' rights and liabilities arising from the use of automated teller machines and other electronic banking services; and
- the Truth in Savings Act, which requires disclosure of yields and costs of deposits and deposit accounts.

#### Effect of Governmental Monetary Policies

Our earnings are affected by the monetary and fiscal policies of the United States government and its agencies, as well as general domestic economic conditions. The Federal Reserve's power to implement national monetary policy has had, and is likely to continue to have, an important impact on the operating results of financial institutions. The Federal Reserve affects the levels of bank loans, investments, and deposits through its control over the issuance of U.S. government securities and through its regulation of the discount rate on borrowings of member banks and the reserve requirements against member bank deposits. It is difficult to predict the nature, timing or impact of future changes in monetary and fiscal policies.

#### Item 1A – Risk Factors

An investment in our stock involves a number of risks. Investors should carefully consider the following risks as well as the other information in this Report and the documents incorporated by reference before making an investment decision. The realization of any of the risks described below could have a material adverse effect on the Company and the price of our common stock.

#### Risks Relating to Our Business

Our industry and business may be adversely affected by conditions in the financial markets and economic conditions generally and in our market areas.

In recent years, we have faced periods of challenging and uncertain economic conditions, including a significant downturn in the oil and gas industry in our market areas. A return of recessionary conditions similar to 2008-2009 and/or a deterioration of national or local economic conditions could adversely affect the financial condition and operating performance of financial institutions. Specifically, declines in real estate values and sales volumes and increased unemployment levels may result in higher than expected loan delinquencies, increases in levels of non-performing and classified assets and a decline in demand for products and services offered by financial institutions. While general economic conditions in the markets in which we operate, as well as in the U.S. and worldwide, continued to improve during 2017, there can be no assurance that this improvement will continue. Uncertainty regarding continuing economic improvement may result in changes in consumer and business spending, borrowing and savings habits, which could cause us to incur losses and may adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.

Our market areas are heavily dependent on, and we have significant credit exposure to, the oil and gas industry.

The economy in a large portion of our market areas is heavily dependent on the oil and gas industry. Many of our customers provide transportation and other services and products that support oil and gas exploration and production activities. We define an energy loan as any loan where the borrower's ability to repay is disproportionately impacted by a prolonged downturn in energy prices. Under this definition, the Bank includes direct Commercial and Industrial (C&I) loans to energy borrowers, as well as Commercial Real Estate loans, Residential Real Estate loans and loans to energy-related borrowers where the loan's primary collateral is cash and marketable securities. Although this definition has resulted in a lack of comparability with some other energy-related banks, management believes it to be the prudent approach to monitoring and managing the Bank's energy exposure. As of December 31, 2017, we had approximately \$179.7 million in loans to borrowers in the oil and gas industry, as defined above, representing approximately 15.2% of our total loans outstanding as of that date. The average loan size is approximately \$419,000, and the average loan size per relationship is roughly \$563,000. The oil and gas industry, especially in Louisiana and Texas, has been subject to significant volatility, including the "oil bust" of the 1980s that severely impacted

- 16 -

---

the economies of many of our market areas and, more recently, volatility in oil and gas prices and material declines in the level of drilling and production activity in Texas, Louisiana and other areas of the U.S. Decisions by certain members of the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries to maintain higher crude oil production levels have led to increased global oil supplies, which, when coupled with the continued exporting restrictions on the U.S. oil and gas industry and weaker global demand, has resulted in sustained low domestic market oil prices. Sustained low market oil prices have compressed margins for many U.S.-based oil producers, particularly those that utilize higher-cost production technologies such as hydraulic fracking and horizontal drilling, as well as oilfield service providers, energy equipment manufacturers and transportation suppliers, among others. These adverse developments in the oil and gas industry have had negative effects on the economies of our market areas in general, including adverse effects on commercial and residential real estate values and the general level of economic activity. If oil prices remain at these low levels for an extended period, the Bank could experience weaker oil and gas related loan demand and increased losses within its oil and gas loan portfolio. Furthermore, a prolonged period of low oil prices could also have a negative impact on the U.S. economy and, in particular, the economies of energy-dominant states such as Louisiana and Texas. Accordingly, if there is further deterioration in the oil and gas industry it could have a material adverse effect on our business, prospects, financial condition and results of operations.

We may suffer losses in our loan portfolio in excess of our allowance for loan losses.

We have experienced increases in the levels of our non-performing assets and loan charge-offs in recent periods. Our total non-performing assets amounted to \$57.3 million, or 3.04% of our total assets, at December 31, 2017, and we had \$27.7 million of net loan charge-offs and a \$30.2 million provision for loan losses for the year ended December 31, 2017. At December 31, 2017, the ratios of our ALLL to non-performing loans and to total loans outstanding were 53.77% and 2.27%, respectively. Additional increases in our non-performing assets or loan charge-offs could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

We seek to mitigate the risks inherent in our loan portfolio by adhering to specific underwriting practices. These practices include analysis of a borrower's prior credit history, financial statements, tax returns and cash flow projections, valuation of collateral based on reports of independent appraisers and verification of liquid assets. Although we believe that our underwriting criteria are appropriate for the various kinds of loans we make, we still may incur losses on loans that meet our underwriting criteria, and these losses may exceed the amounts set aside as reserves in our ALLL. We create an ALLL in our accounting records, based on, among other considerations, the following:

- industry historical losses as reported by the FDIC;
- historical experience with our loans;
- evaluation of economic conditions;
- regular reviews of the quality mix, including our distribution of loans by risk grade within our portfolio, and size of our overall loan portfolio;
- regular reviews of delinquencies; and
- the quality of the collateral underlying our loans.

Although we maintain an ALLL at a level that we believe is adequate to absorb losses inherent in our loan portfolio, changes in economic, operating and other conditions, including conditions which are beyond our control such as a sharp decline in real estate values and changes in interest rates, may cause our actual loan losses to exceed our current allowance estimates. Additions to the ALLL could result in a decrease in net earnings and capital and could hinder our ability to grow. Further, if our actual loan losses exceed the amount reserved, it could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

In June 2016, the FASB issued Accounting Standards Update (ASU) 2016-13, "Financial Instruments-Credit Losses (Topic 326): Measurement of Credit Losses on Financial Instruments," referred to as "CECL" (current expected credit

loss), which replaces the current incurred loss impairment methodology with a methodology that requires the measurement of all expected credit losses for financial assets not recorded at fair value based on historical experience, current conditions, and reasonable and supportable forecasts. The Company intends to adopt ASU 2016-13 during the first quarter of 2020, and adoption of this ASU could materially affect its allowance for loan losses methodology, financial condition, capital levels and results of operations, including expenses the Company may incur in implementing this ASU.

The Company and the Bank have both been placed in troubled condition by their respective federal banking regulators, which subjects us to significant restrictions and will require us to designate a significant amount of resources to comply. A failure to comply with restrictions imposed on financial institutions in troubled condition or with the terms of the written agreement to which the Bank is subject within the required timeframes could have a material adverse effect upon our business, financial condition and results of operations.

- 17 -

---

As discussed above in Item 1 under the heading “Business - Supervision and Regulation,” the Company and the Bank are both in “troubled condition” and the Bank has entered into a written agreement with the OCC. Because the Company is in troubled condition, the Company (1) must notify the Federal Reserve prior to adding or replacing a member of its board of directors or employing, or changing the responsibilities of any senior executive officer, and (2) may not, except under certain circumstances, enter into any agreements to make severance or indemnification payments or make any such payments to “institution-affiliated parties” as defined in the regulations. The Bank is subject to similar restrictions due to its troubled condition status. Under the written agreement, the Bank is also required to take certain immediate and continuing actions related to problem assets and lending practices, among other remedial actions.

If the Company or the Bank is not successful in complying with their respective regulatory restrictions, or the Bank does not comply with the written agreement within the required time frames, we could become subject to additional enforcement actions, sanctions or restrictions on our business activities. While subject to regulatory actions and restrictions, we expect that our management and Board of Directors will be required to focus considerable time and attention on taking corrective actions. We have also hired third party consultants and advisors to assist us, which will increase our non-interest expense and reduce our earnings. The Bank has appointed a committee to monitor compliance with the written agreement and is working to promptly address the requirements of the written agreement. There is no guarantee, however, that the Bank will successfully address the OCC’s concerns in the written agreement or that we will be able to comply with it. If we do not comply with the written agreement, we could be subject to civil monetary penalties, further regulatory sanctions and/or other enforcement actions.

We may become subject to additional enforcement actions that could have a material negative effect on our business, operations, financial condition, results of operations or the value of our common stock. Federal and state regulators have the ability to impose substantial sanctions, restrictions and requirements on our banking subsidiaries if they determine, upon examination or otherwise, violations of laws, rules or regulations with which we or our subsidiaries must comply, or weaknesses or failures with respect to general standards of safety and soundness. Such enforcement may be formal or informal and can include directors’ resolutions, memoranda of understanding, consent orders, written agreements, civil money penalties and termination of deposit insurance and bank closures. Enforcement actions may be taken regardless of the capital level of the institution. In particular, institutions that are not sufficiently capitalized in accordance with regulatory standards may also face capital directives or prompt corrective action. Enforcement actions may impose restrictions on the payment of dividends or severance payments, require certain corrective steps (including staff additions or changes), impose limits on activities (such as lending, deposit taking, ability to accept brokered-deposits or branching), prescribe lending parameters (such as loan types, volumes and terms), require the disposition of certain assets and liabilities, require additional capital to be raised or expenses to be incurred or prevent us from conducting any expansionary activities, including acquisitions. The imposition of any additional enforcement actions or regulatory sanctions or monetary penalties could have a material negative effect on our business, operations, financial condition, results of operations or the value of our common stock.

We may be unable to successfully implement and manage our recently announced strategic initiatives, which could result in the failure to achieve the anticipated cost savings and materially impair our profitability and financial condition.

We recently began the implementation of a number of strategic initiatives to address the regulatory concerns and market challenges and to improve the overall profitability and financial condition of the Company and the Bank. There can be no assurances that these strategic initiatives will be successful in addressing these concerns and challenges, and if we are not successful in implementing and managing these strategic initiatives our profitability and financial condition could be materially impaired in future periods. We may also incur expenses in connection with these strategic initiatives beyond our current estimates, which may result in additional losses to us and the costs of these strategic initiatives outweighing any benefits resulting therefrom. Furthermore, if these strategic initiatives do not adequately address regulatory concerns, we could become subject to additional regulatory actions, including



enforcement actions as described in the preceding risk factors.

Loss of key officers or employees, or failure to successfully transition our management, could materially and adversely affect our business and operating results and may disrupt relationships with certain customers.

As a community bank, our business is primarily relationship-driven in that many of our key employees have extensive customer relationships. In addition, our success has been and will continue to be greatly influenced by the ability to retain senior management and, with expansion, to attract and retain qualified additional senior and middle management. We recently replaced our President and Chief Executive Officer and have also appointed other new executive officers. Our future success will depend, to a significant extent, on the ability of our new management team to operate effectively, both individually and as a group. We must successfully manage issues that may result from the transition of the new members of our executive management. Loss of a key employee with such customer relationships may lead to the loss of business if the customers were to follow that employee to a competitor. While we believe our relationships with our key personnel are good, we cannot guarantee that all of our key personnel will

- 18 -

---

remain with our organization. Loss of such key personnel, should they enter into an employment relationship with one of our competitors, could result in the loss of some of our customers.

We cannot predict the effect of recent or future legislative and regulatory initiatives.

Financial institutions have been the subject of substantial legislative and regulatory changes and may be the subject of further legislation or regulation in the future, including: (i) changes in banking, securities and tax laws and regulations and their application by our regulators, including pursuant to the Dodd-Frank Act, as discussed above in Item 1 under the heading “Business – Supervision and Regulation”; and (ii) changes in the scope and cost of FDIC insurance and other coverage, none of which is within our control. Significant new laws or regulations or changes in, or repeals of, existing laws or regulations may cause our results of operations to differ materially from those we currently anticipate. In addition, the cost and burden of compliance with applicable laws and regulations have significantly increased and could adversely affect our ability to operate profitably. Further, federal monetary policy significantly affects credit conditions for us, as well as for our borrowers, particularly as implemented by the Federal Reserve Board, primarily through open market operations in U.S. government securities, the discount rate for bank borrowings and reserve requirements. A material change in any of these conditions could have a material impact on us or our borrowers, and therefore on our business, prospects, financial condition and results of operations.

The short-term and long-term impact of the changing regulatory capital requirements is uncertain.

Effective January 1, 2015, the Basel III Capital Rules that substantially changed the regulatory risk-based capital rules applicable to the Company and the Bank began to phase in. The Basel III Capital Rules include new minimum risk-based capital and leverage ratios and modify the capital and asset definitions for purposes of calculating those ratios. Among other things, as of January 1, 2015, the Basel III Capital Rules established a new common equity Tier 1 minimum capital requirement of 4.5%, a higher minimum Tier 1 capital to risk-weighted assets requirement of 6.0% and a higher total capital to risk-weighted assets of 8.0%. In addition, the Basel III Capital Rules provide, to be considered “well-capitalized,” a new common equity Tier 1 capital requirement of 6.5% and a higher Tier 1 capital to risk-weighted assets requirement of 8.0% that are effective as of January 1, 2015. Moreover, the Basel III Capital Rules limit a banking organization’s capital distributions and certain discretionary bonus payments if the banking organization does not hold a “capital conservation buffer” consisting of an additional 2.5% of common equity Tier 1 capital in addition to the 4.5% minimum common equity Tier 1 requirement and the other amounts necessary to the minimum risk-based capital requirements that is being phased in beginning in 2016 and fully effective in 2019.

The application of the more stringent capital requirements described above could, among other things, result in lower returns on invested capital, require the raising of additional capital, and result in additional regulatory actions if we were to be unable to comply with such requirements. Furthermore, the imposition of liquidity requirements under the Basel III Capital Rules could result in our having to lengthen the term of our funding, restructure our business models, and/or increase our holdings of liquid assets. Implementation of changes to asset risk weightings for risk-based capital calculations, items included or deducted in calculating regulatory capital and/or additional capital conservation buffers could result in us modifying our business strategy and could limit our ability to pay dividends.

We have a concentration of exposure to a number of individual borrowers. Given the size of these loan relationships relative to capital levels and earnings, a significant loss on any one of these loans could materially and adversely affect us.

We have a concentration of exposure to a number of individual borrowers. Our largest exposure to one borrowing relationship as of December 31, 2017, was approximately \$12.3 million, which is 4.9% of our total capital. In addition, as of December 31, 2017, the aggregate exposure to the ten largest borrowing relationships was approximately \$110.6 million, which was 9.4% of loans and 43.5% of total capital. As a result of this concentration, a change in the financial condition of one or more of these borrowers could result in significant loan losses and have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

A significant percentage of our deposits are attributable to a relatively small number of customers. The loss of all or some of these customers or a significant decline in their deposit balances may have a material adverse effect on our liquidity and results of operations.

As of December 31, 2017, our 20 largest depositors accounted for approximately 10.3% of total deposits, of which our top five depositors accounted for approximately 5.1% of total deposits. The ability to attract these types of deposits has a positive effect on our net interest margin as they provide a relatively low cost of funds to the Bank. While we believe we have strong, long-term relationships with each of these customers, the loss of one or more of our 20 largest deposit customers, or a significant decline in the deposit balances would adversely affect our liquidity and require us to attract new deposits, purchase federal funds or borrow funds on a short-term basis to replace such deposits, possibly at interest rates higher than those currently paid on such deposits. This could increase our total cost of funds and could result in a decrease in our net interest income and net earnings.

- 19 -

---

If we were unable to develop alternative funding sources, we may have difficulty funding loans or meeting other deposit withdrawal requirements.

We occasionally purchase non-recourse loan participations from other banks based in part on information provided by the selling bank.

From time to time, we purchase loan participations from other banks in the ordinary course of business, usually without recourse to the selling bank. As of December 31, 2017, we had approximately \$56.7 million in purchased loan participations, or approximately 4.7% of our total loan portfolio. When we purchase loan participations, we apply the same underwriting standards as we would to loans that we directly originate and seek to purchase only loans that would satisfy these standards. However, we are not as familiar with the borrower and may rely on information provided to us by the selling bank and typically must rely on the selling bank's administration of the loan relationship. We therefore have less control over, and may incur more risk with respect to, loan participations that we purchase from selling banks as compared to loans that we originate.

Our focus on lending to small to mid-sized community-based businesses may increase our credit risk.

Most of our commercial business and commercial real estate loans are made to small business or middle market customers. These businesses generally have fewer financial resources in terms of capital or borrowing capacity than larger entities and have a heightened vulnerability to economic conditions. If general economic conditions in the markets in which we operate negatively impact this important customer sector, our results of operations and financial condition and the value of our common stock may be adversely affected. Moreover, a portion of these loans have been made by us in recent years and the borrowers may not have experienced a complete business or economic cycle. Furthermore, the deterioration of our borrowers' businesses may hinder their ability to repay their loans with us, which could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

Our loan portfolio includes a substantial percentage of commercial and industrial loans, which may be subject to greater risks than those related to residential loans.

Our loan portfolio includes a substantial percentage of commercial and industrial loans. Commercial and industrial loans generally carry larger loan balances and historically have involved a greater degree of financial and credit risks than residential first mortgage loans. Repayment of our commercial and industrial loans is often dependent on cash flow of the borrower, which may be unpredictable, and collateral securing these loans may fluctuate in value. Our commercial and industrial loans are primarily made based on the cash flow of the borrower and, secondarily, on the underlying collateral provided by the borrower. Most often, this collateral consists of accounts receivable, inventory, equipment, or real estate. In the case of loans secured by accounts receivable, the availability of funds for the repayment of these loans may be substantially dependent on the ability of the borrower to collect amounts due from its customers. Other collateral securing loans may depreciate over time, may be difficult to appraise and may fluctuate in value based on the success of the business. At December 31, 2017, commercial and industrial loans totaled approximately 36.8% of our total loan portfolio. Adverse changes in local economic conditions impacting our business borrowers could have a material adverse effect on our business, prospects, financial condition and results of operations.

We have a high concentration of loans secured by real estate, and an adverse change in the real estate market could have a material effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

A significant portion of our loan portfolio is dependent on real estate. At December 31, 2017, approximately 57.9% of our loans had real estate as a primary or secondary component of collateral. The collateral in each case provides an alternate source of repayment if the borrower defaults and may deteriorate in value during the time the credit is extended. An adverse change in the economy affecting values of real estate in our primary markets could significantly impair the value of real estate collateral and the ability to sell real estate collateral upon foreclosure. Furthermore, it is likely that we would be required to increase the provision for loan losses. A related risk in connection with loans secured by real estate is the effect of unknown or unexpected environmental contamination, which could make the real

estate effectively unmarketable or otherwise significantly reduce its value as collateral. If we were required to liquidate real estate collateral securing a loan to satisfy the debt during a period of reduced real estate values or to increase the allowance for loan losses, it could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

We are subject to environmental liability risk associated with our lending activities.

A significant portion of the Bank's loan portfolio is secured by real property. During the ordinary course of business, the Bank may foreclose on and take title to properties securing certain loans. In doing so, there is a risk that hazardous or toxic substances could be found on these properties. If hazardous or toxic substances are found, we may be liable for remediation costs, as well as for personal injury and property damage. Environmental laws may require us to incur substantial expenses and may materially reduce the affected property's value or limit the Bank's ability to use or sell the affected property. In addition, future laws or

- 20 -

---

more stringent interpretations or enforcement policies with respect to existing laws may increase our exposure to environmental liability. The remediation costs and any other financial liabilities associated with an environmental hazard could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

Our future earnings could be adversely affected by non-cash charges for goodwill impairment, if a future test of goodwill indicates that goodwill has been impaired.

As prescribed by Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) Topic 350, “Intangibles — Goodwill and Other,” we undertake an annual review of the goodwill asset balance reflected in our financial statements. We conduct an annual review in the fourth quarter of each year, unless there has been a triggering event prescribed by applicable accounting rules that warrants an earlier interim testing for possible goodwill impairment. After our most recent annual review in the fourth quarter of 2017, we concluded there was no goodwill impairment as of such date. As of December 31, 2017, we had \$42.2 million in goodwill. Future goodwill impairment tests may result in future non-cash charges, which could adversely affect our earnings for any such future period.

Changes in the fair value of our securities may reduce our stockholders’ equity and net income.

At December 31, 2017, \$309.2 million of our securities (at fair value) were classified as available-for-sale. At such date, the aggregate net unrealized loss on our available-for-sale securities was \$3.4 million. We increase or decrease stockholders’ equity by the amount of change from the unrealized gain or loss (the difference between the estimated fair value and the amortized cost) of our available-for-sale securities portfolio, net of the related tax, under the category of accumulated other comprehensive income/loss. Therefore, a decline in the estimated fair value of this portfolio will result in a decline in reported stockholders’ equity, as well as book value per common share and tangible book value per common share. This decrease will occur even though the securities are not sold. In the case of debt securities, if these securities are never sold and there are no credit impairments, the decrease will be recovered over the life of the securities. In the case of equity securities which have no stated maturity, the declines in fair value may or may not be recovered over time.

We monitor the fair value of our entire securities portfolio as part of our ongoing other than temporary impairment (“OTTI”) evaluation process. No assurance can be given that we will not need to recognize OTTI charges related to securities in the future. In addition, as a condition to membership in the Federal Home Loan Bank of Dallas (“FHLB-Dallas”), we are required to purchase and hold a certain amount of FHLB-Dallas stock. Our stock purchase requirement is based, in part, upon the outstanding principal balance of advances from the FHLB-Dallas. At December 31, 2017, we had stock in the FHLB-Dallas totaling approximately \$3.5 million. The FHLB-Dallas stock held by us is carried at cost and is subject to recoverability testing under applicable accounting standards. For the year ended December 31, 2017, we did not recognize an impairment charge related to our FHLB-Dallas stock holdings. There can be no assurance, however, that future negative changes to the financial condition of the FHLB-Dallas may not require us to recognize an impairment charge with respect to such holdings.

The CFPB may reshape the consumer financial laws through rulemaking and enforcement of the prohibitions against unfair, deceptive and abusive business practices, which may directly impact the business operations of depository institutions offering consumer financial products or services, including the Bank.

The CFPB has broad rulemaking authority to administer and carry out the provisions of the Dodd-Frank Act with respect to financial institutions that offer to consumers covered financial products and services. The CFPB has also been directed to write rules identifying practices or acts that are unfair, deceptive or abusive in connection with any transaction with a consumer for a consumer financial product or service, or the offering of a consumer financial product or service. The concept of what may be considered to be an “abusive” practice is new under the law. While the Bank will not be supervised by the CFPB, it will still be subject to the regulations and policies promulgated by the CFPB and may be examined by the OCC for compliance therewith. The costs and limitations related to complying with any new regulations established by the CFPB have yet to be fully determined and could be material. Further, the limitations and restrictions that will be placed upon the Bank with respect to its consumer product offerings and

services may also produce significant, material effects on the Bank's (and our) profitability.

A natural disaster, especially one affecting one of our market areas, could adversely affect us. Since most of our business is conducted in Louisiana and Texas, most of our credit exposure is in those states. Historically, Louisiana and Texas have been vulnerable to natural disasters. Therefore, we are susceptible to the risks of natural disasters, such as hurricanes, floods and tornadoes. Natural disasters could harm our operations directly through interference with communications, including the interruption or loss of our websites, which would prevent us from gathering deposits, originating loans and processing and controlling our flow of business, as well as through the destruction of facilities and our operational, financial and management information systems. A natural disaster or recurring power outages may also impair the value of our largest class of assets, our loan portfolio, as uninsured or underinsured losses, including losses from business disruption, may reduce borrowers' ability to repay their loans. Disasters may also reduce the value of the real estate securing our loans, impairing our ability to recover on defaulted loans through foreclosure and making it more likely that we would suffer losses on defaulted

- 21 -

---

loans. Although we have implemented several back-up systems and protections (and maintain business interruption insurance), these measures may not protect us fully from the effects of a natural disaster. The occurrence of natural disasters in our market areas could have a material adverse effect on our business, prospects, financial condition and results of operations.

Our profitability is vulnerable to interest rate fluctuations.

Our profitability is dependent to a large extent on net interest income, which is the difference between our interest income on interest-earning assets, such as loans and investment securities, and interest expense on interest-bearing liabilities, such as deposits and borrowings. When interest-bearing liabilities mature or reprice more quickly than interest-earning assets in a given period, a significant increase in market rates of interest could adversely affect net interest income. Conversely, when interest-earning assets mature or reprice more quickly than interest-bearing liabilities, falling interest rates could result in a decrease in net interest income. Furthermore, some of our variable interest rate loans have minimum fixed interest rates (“floors”) that are currently above the contractual variable interest rate. If interest rates rise, the interest income from our variable interest rate loans with floors may not increase as quickly as interest expense on our liabilities, which would negatively impact our net interest income.

The banking industry has experienced a prolonged period of unusually low interest rates. The Federal Reserve began raising rates in late 2015 and their benchmark rate and market rates increased during 2016 and 2017. Although financial markets generally expect the Federal Reserve to raise its benchmark rate multiple times during 2018, there is substantial uncertainty regarding the extent to which interest rates may increase in 2018 and future periods and what the future effects of any such increases will be. There is no assurance that recent expectations of increasing interest rates in future periods will be realized.

In periods of increasing interest rates, loan originations may decline, depending on the performance of the overall economy, which may adversely affect income from lending activities and rates paid on deposits and borrowings may reprice before rates earned on loans or investment securities. Also, increases in interest rates could adversely affect the market value of fixed income assets. In addition, an increase in the general level of interest rates may affect the ability of certain borrowers to pay the interest and principal on their obligations.

Non-performing assets take significant time to resolve and adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.

Non-performing assets adversely affect our net earnings in various ways. We generally do not record interest income on non-performing loans or other real estate owned, thereby adversely affecting our earnings, and increasing our loan administration costs. When we take collateral in foreclosures and similar proceedings, we mark the related asset to the then fair market value of the collateral less estimated selling costs, which may result in a loss. An increase in the level of non-performing assets increases our risk profile and may impact the capital levels our regulators believe are appropriate in light of the ensuing risk profile. While we reduce problem assets through loan sales, workouts, restructurings and otherwise, decreases in the value of the underlying collateral, or in these borrowers’ performance or financial condition, whether or not due to economic and market conditions beyond our control, could adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition. In addition, the resolution of non-performing assets, including taking actions required by the Bank's written agreement with the OCC, requires significant commitments of time from management and our directors, which can be detrimental to the performance of their other responsibilities. We may also hire third party consultants and advisors to assist us, which would increase our non-interest expense and reduce our earnings. There can be no assurance that we will not experience future increases in non-performing assets.

The soundness of other financial institutions could adversely affect us.

Financial services institutions are interrelated as a result of trading, clearing, counterparty, or other relationships. We have exposure to many different industries and counterparties, and we routinely execute transactions with counterparties in the financial services industry, including commercial banks, brokers and dealers, investment banks



and other institutional clients. Many of these transactions expose us to credit risk in the event of a default by a counterparty or client. In addition, our credit risk may be exacerbated when the collateral held by us cannot be realized or is liquidated at prices not sufficient to recover the full amount of the credit or derivative exposure due to us. Any such losses could have a material adverse effect on our business, prospects, financial condition and results of operations.

We operate within a highly regulated environment and our business and results are affected by the regulations to which we are subject.

We operate within a highly regulated environment. The regulations to which we are subject will continue to have an impact on our operations and the degree to which we can grow and be profitable. Certain regulators, to which we are subject, have significant power in reviewing our operations and approving our business practices. In recent years the Bank, as well as other financial institutions, has experienced increased regulation and regulatory scrutiny, often requiring additional resources. In addition, investigations or proceedings brought by regulatory agencies may result in judgments, settlements, fines, penalties, or other

- 22 -

---

results adverse to us. There is no assurance that any change to the regulatory requirements to which we are subject, or the way in which such regulatory requirements are interpreted or enforced, will not have a negative effect on our ability to conduct our business and our results of operations.

Our operations may be adversely affected by cybersecurity risks.

In the ordinary course of business, we collect and store sensitive data, including proprietary business information and personally identifiable information of our customers and employees in systems and on networks. The secure processing, maintenance, and use of this information is critical to our operations and business strategy. In addition, we rely heavily on communications and information systems to conduct our business. Any failure, interruption, or breach in security or operational integrity of these systems could result in failures or disruptions in our customer relationship management, general ledger, deposit, loan, and other systems. We have invested in accepted technologies, and continually review processes and practices that are designed to protect its networks, computers, and data from damage or unauthorized access. Despite these security measures, our computer systems and infrastructure may be vulnerable to attacks by hackers or breached due to employee error, malfeasance, or other disruptions. A breach of any kind could compromise systems and the information stored there could be accessed, damaged, or disclosed. A breach in security or other failure could result in legal claims, regulatory penalties, disruption in operations, increased expenses, loss of customers and business partners, and damage to our reputation, which could adversely affect our business and financial condition. Furthermore, as cyber threats continue to evolve and increase, we may be required to expend significant additional financial and operational resources to modify or enhance its protective measures, or to investigate and remediate any identified information security vulnerabilities.

We rely heavily on technology and computer systems. The negative effects of computer system failures and unethical individuals with the technological ability to cause disruption of service could adversely affect our reputation and our ability to generate deposits.

Our ability to compete depends on our ability to continue to adapt and deliver technology on a timely and cost-effective basis to meet customers' demands for financial services. We provide our customers the ability to bank online and many customers now remotely submit deposits to us through remote-capture systems. The secure transmission of confidential information over the Internet is a critical element of these services. Our network could be vulnerable to unauthorized access, computer viruses, phishing schemes and other security problems. We may be required to spend significant capital and other resources to protect against the threat of security breaches and computer viruses, or to alleviate problems caused by security breaches or viruses. To the extent that our activities or the activities of our customers involve the storage and transmission of confidential information, security breaches and viruses could expose us to claims, litigation and other possible liabilities. Any inability to prevent security breaches or computer viruses could also cause existing customers to lose confidence in our systems and could adversely affect our reputation and our ability to generate deposits.

We rely on third parties to provide key components of our business infrastructure.

Third parties provide key components of our business operations such as data processing, recording and monitoring transactions, online banking interfaces and services, Internet connections and network access. While we have selected these third party vendors carefully, we do not control their actions. Any problems caused by these third parties, including those resulting from disruptions in communication services provided by a vendor, failure of a vendor to handle current or higher volumes, cyber-attacks and security breaches at a vendor, failure of a vendor to provide services for any reason or poor performance of services, could adversely affect our ability to deliver products and services to our customers and otherwise conduct our business. Financial or operational difficulties of a third party vendor could also hurt our operations if those difficulties interfere with the vendor's ability to serve us. Furthermore, our vendors could also be sources of operational and information security risk to us, including from breakdowns or failures of their own systems or capacity constraints. Replacing these third party vendors could also create significant delay and expense. Accordingly, use of such third parties creates an unavoidable inherent risk to our business operations.

Consumers may decide not to use banks to complete their financial transactions.

Technology and other changes are allowing parties to complete financial transactions through alternative methods that historically have involved banks. For example, consumers can now maintain funds that would have historically been held as bank deposits in brokerage accounts, mutual funds or general-purpose reloadable prepaid cards. Consumers can also complete transactions such as paying bills and/or transferring funds directly without the assistance of banks. The process of eliminating banks as intermediaries, known as “disintermediation,” could result in the loss of fee income, as well as the loss of customer deposits and the related income generated from those deposits. The loss of these revenue streams and the lower cost of deposits as a source of funds could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

Risks Relating to an Investment in Our Common Stock

- 23 -

---

Our future ability to pay dividends and repurchase stock is subject to restrictions and we may be unable to pay future dividends even if we desire to do so.

Holders of our common stock are only entitled to receive such cash dividends as our board of directors may declare out of funds legally available for such payments. Although we have historically declared cash dividends on our common stock, we are not required to do so and may reduce or eliminate our common stock cash dividend in the future. This could adversely affect the market price of our common stock. Since we are a holding company, we have no material source of income other than dividends received from the Bank. Although we had \$50.2 million of cash at December 31, 2017, historically, our ability to pay dividends to our shareholders has depended on the Bank's ability to pay dividends to us. Moreover, banks and bank holding companies are both subject to certain federal and state regulatory restrictions on cash dividends. We are also restricted from paying dividends if we have deferred payments of the interest on, or an event of default has occurred with respect to, our trust preferred securities, Series B Preferred Stock or Series C Preferred Stock. Additionally, terms and conditions of our outstanding shares of preferred stock place certain restrictions and limitations on our common stock dividends and repurchases of our common stock.

The holders of our preferred stock and trust preferred securities have rights that are senior to those of stockholders and that may impact our ability to pay dividends on our common stock and net income available to our common stockholders.

At December 31, 2017, we had outstanding \$22.2 million of trust preferred securities. These securities are senior to shares of common stock. As a result, we must make payments on our trust preferred securities before any dividends can be paid on our common stock. Moreover, in the event of our bankruptcy, dissolution, or liquidation, the obligations outstanding with respect to our trust preferred securities must be satisfied before any distributions can be made to our stockholders. While we have the right to defer dividends on the trust preferred securities for a period of up to five years, if any such election is made, no dividends may be paid to our common or preferred stockholders during that time.

In addition, with respect to the \$32.0 million in Series B Preferred Stock outstanding that was issued to the Treasury in the SBLF transaction, we are required to pay cumulative dividends on the Series B Preferred Stock at an annual rate. The dividend rate was set at 1.00% beginning in the fourth quarter of 2013 due to attaining the target 10% growth rate in qualified small business loans during the second quarter of 2013. Beginning February 25, 2016, the dividend rate increased to 9% per annum. The \$9.0 million in Series C Preferred Stock currently outstanding that was originally issued in connection with the PSB acquisition calls for the non-cumulative payment of dividends at an annual rate of 4.0%. Dividends paid on our Series B Preferred Stock or Series C Preferred Stock will also reduce the net income available to our common stockholders and our earnings per common share. We may not declare or pay dividends on our common stock or repurchase shares of our common stock without first having paid all accrued preferred dividends that are due.

Share ownership may be diluted by the issuance of additional shares of common stock in the future.

Our stock incentive plan provides for the granting of stock incentives to directors, officers, and employees. As of December 31, 2017, there were 188,275 shares issued under options. Likewise, approximately 182,288 shares may be issued in the future to directors, officers, and employees under our existing equity incentive plans. In addition, in 2009, as part of our participation in the Treasury's Capital Purchase Program ("CPP"), we issued a stock purchase warrant that currently entitles the holder to purchase 104,384 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$14.37 per share. It is probable that options and/or warrants will be exercised during their respective terms if the stock price exceeds the exercise price of the particular option or warrant. The incentive plan also provides that all issued options automatically and fully vest upon a change in control. If the options are exercised, share ownership will be diluted.

Additionally, share ownership of our common stock will be diluted from shares issued upon conversion of the Series C Preferred Stock issued in the PSB acquisition. As of December 31, 2017, there were 89,875 shares of Series C Preferred Stock issued and outstanding. Holders may convert the Series C Preferred Stock at any time into shares of the Company's common stock at a conversion price of \$18.00 per share, subject to customary antidilution adjustments. In addition, the Company currently has the option to require conversion of the Series C Preferred Stock if the closing price of the Company's common stock for 20 trading days within any period of 30 consecutive trading days, exceeds 130% of the conversion price.

In addition, our articles of incorporation authorize the issuance of up to 30,000,000 shares of common stock and 5,000,000 shares of preferred stock, but do not provide for preemptive rights to the stockholders; therefore, stockholders will not automatically have the right to subscribe for additional shares. As a result, if we issue additional shares to raise additional capital or for other corporate purposes, you may be unable to maintain your pro rata ownership in the Company.

Only a limited trading market exists for our common stock, which could lead to price volatility.

- 24 -

---

Our common stock is listed for trading on the NYSE under the trading symbol “MSL,” but there is low trading volume in our common stock. The limited trading market for our common stock may cause fluctuations in the market value of our common stock to be exaggerated, leading to price volatility in excess of that which might occur in a more active trading market of our common stock. Future sales of substantial amounts of common stock in the public market, or the perception that such sales may occur, could adversely affect the prevailing market price of our common stock. In addition, even if a more active market in our common stock develops, we cannot assure you that such a market will continue.

Our directors and executive management own a significant number of shares of stock, allowing further control over business and corporate affairs.

Our directors and executive officers beneficially own approximately 1.9 million shares, or 11.5%, of our outstanding common stock as of December 31, 2017. As a result, in addition to their day-to-day management roles, they will be able to exercise significant influence on our business as stockholders, including influence over election of the Board and the authorization of other corporate actions requiring shareholder approval. In deciding on how to vote on certain proposals, our stockholders should be aware that our directors and executive officers may have interests that are different from, or in addition to, the interests of our stockholders generally.

Provisions of our articles of incorporation and by-laws, Louisiana law, and state and federal banking regulations could delay or prevent a takeover by a third party.

Our articles of incorporation and by-laws could delay, defer, or prevent a third party takeover, despite possible benefit to the stockholders, or otherwise adversely affect the price of our common stock. Our governing documents:

- permit directors to be removed by stockholders only for cause and only upon an 80% vote;
- require 80% of the voting power for stockholders to amend the by-laws, call a special meeting, or amend the articles of incorporation, in each case if the proposed action was not approved by the Board;
- authorize a class of preferred stock that may be issued in series with terms, including voting rights, established by the Board without stockholder approval;
- authorize approximately 30 million shares of common stock and 5 million shares of preferred stock that may be issued by the Board without shareholder approval;
- classify our Board with staggered three year terms, preventing a change in a majority of the Board at any annual meeting;
- require advance notice of proposed nominations for election to the Board and business to be conducted at a shareholder meeting; and
- require 80% of the voting power for stockholders to approve business combinations not approved by the Board.

These provisions would likely preclude a third party from removing incumbent directors and simultaneously gaining control of the Board by filling the vacancies thus created with its own nominees. Under the classified Board provisions, it would take at least two elections of directors for any individual or group to gain control of the Board. Accordingly, these provisions could discourage a third party from initiating a proxy contest, making a tender offer or otherwise attempting to gain control. These provisions may have the effect of delaying consideration of a shareholder proposal until the next annual meeting unless a special meeting is called by the Board or the chairman of the Board. Moreover, even in the absence of an attempted takeover, the provisions make it difficult for stockholders dissatisfied with the Board to effect a change in the Board’s composition, even at annual meetings.

A shareholder’s investment is not an insured deposit.

An investment in our common stock is not a bank deposit and is not insured or guaranteed by the FDIC or any other government agency. Your investment in our common stock will be subject to investment risk and you may lose all or part of your investment.

Item 1B – Unresolved Staff Comments

None.

Item 2 - Properties

We lease our principal executive and administrative offices and principal facility in Lafayette, Louisiana under a lease expiring July 31, 2021. In addition to our principal facility, we also have seven other branches located in Lafayette, Louisiana, two in New Iberia, Louisiana, four in Baton Rouge, Louisiana, three in Natchitoches, Louisiana, two in Lake Charles, Louisiana, and one branch in each of the following Louisiana cities: Breaux Bridge, Cecilia, Houma, St. Martinville, Opelousas, Carencro,

- 25 -

---

Morgan City, Jennings, Sulphur, Thibodaux, Robeline, Toledo Bend, Greenwood, Zwolle, Many and Mansfield. We also have an operations office in Breaux Bridge, Louisiana. Twenty-nine of these offices are owned and seven are leased.

Additionally, in our Texas market area we have two full service branches located in Beaumont, Texas. Our additional full service branches in the Texas market area are located in Houston, Vidor, Conroe, Magnolia, College Station, Plano, Mesquite, Rockwall, Greenville, Tyler and Texarkana. Of these offices, eleven are owned and two are leased.

#### Item 3 - Legal Proceedings

The Bank has been named as a defendant in various other legal actions arising from normal business activities in which damages of various amounts are claimed. While the amount, if any, of ultimate liability with respect to such matters cannot be currently determined, management believes, after consulting with legal counsel, that any such liability will not have a material adverse effect on the Company's consolidated financial position, results of operations, or cash flows. However, in the event of unexpected future developments in these matters, if the ultimate resolution of any such matter is unfavorable, the result may be material to the Company's consolidated financial position, consolidated results of operations or consolidated cash flows.

#### Item 4 – Mine Safety Disclosures

Not applicable.

- 26 -

---



### Executive Officers of the Registrant

The names, ages as of December 31, 2017, and positions of our current executive officers are listed below along with their business experience during the past five years.

James R. McLemore, 58 – President and Chief Executive Officer of the Company and the Bank since May 2017. Mr. McLemore previously served as the Company’s Interim President and Chief Executive Officer since April 2017 and Chief Financial Officer since July 2009. Prior to joining the Company, Mr. McLemore served as Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer of Security Bank Corporation from 2002 until July 2009. In July 2009, subsequent to Mr. McLemore’s departure, the six subsidiary banks of Security Bank Corporation were closed and the FDIC was appointed receiver of the banks. Security Bank Corporation subsequently filed for bankruptcy in August of 2009. Mr. McLemore has also been a member of the Board of Directors of the Company and the Bank since June 2017.

Erin DeWitt, 39 – Senior Executive Vice President and Chief Risk Officer of the Company and the Bank since May 2017. Ms. DeWitt previously had been serving as Chief Risk Officer of the Bank since April 2017. Prior to joining the Company, Ms. DeWitt served as Chief Risk Officer for Scottrade Financial Services for two years. Ms. DeWitt served in various risk related roles at Capital One over seven years prior to joining Scottrade. Ms. DeWitt was also an examiner with the Federal Reserve System from 2000-2004.

Lorraine Miller, 54 – Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer of the Company and the Bank since May 2017. Ms. Miller previously served as the Senior Vice President, Director of Mergers and Acquisitions of the Company and the Bank since February 2010, and the Treasurer of the Company and the Bank since January 2013. Prior to joining the Company, Ms. Miller served as Senior Vice President in Finance and Investor Relations roles with Security Bank Corporation and WestPoint Home and as a Senior Equity Research Analyst at SunTrust Equitable Securities and The Robinson-Humphrey Company, Inc. over a span of 23 years.

Clay Abington, 51 – Executive Vice President Corporate Efficiency of the Company and the Bank since May 2017. Mr. Abington previously served as Senior Vice President Business Process Manager of the Bank since December 2012. Prior to joining the Company, Mr. Abington served in various capacities for PSB Financial, Inc., including Senior Vice President and Chief Risk Officer. Mr Abington is the son of Mr. Leonard Q. “Pete” Abington, a member of the Company’s board of directors.

All executive officers are appointed for one year terms expiring at the first meeting of the Board of Directors after the annual stockholders meeting next succeeding his or her election and until his or her successor is elected and qualified.

## PART II

### Item 5 - Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Shareholder Matters, and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities

As of February 28, 2018, there were 897 common stockholders of record. The Company's common stock trades on the NYSE under the symbol "MSL." The high and low sales price for the past eight quarters has been provided in the Selected Quarterly Financial Data tables that are included with this filing under Item 8 and is incorporated herein by reference.

Cash dividends totaling \$2.8 million were declared to common stockholders during 2017. The regular quarterly dividend of \$0.09 per share was paid for the first and second quarters of 2017. The regular quarterly dividend was decreased to \$0.01 per share for the third and fourth quarters of 2017, for a total of \$0.20 per share for the year. Cash dividends totaling \$4.1 million were declared to common stockholders during 2016. The regular quarterly dividend of \$0.09 per share was paid for all four quarters of 2016, for a total of \$0.36 per share for the year.

The amount of future dividends, if any, will be determined by our board of directors and will depend on our earnings, financial condition and other factors considered by the board of directors to be relevant. In addition, the payment of cash dividends on our common stock will depend upon the ability of the Bank to declare and pay dividends to the Company. The Bank's ability to pay dividends will depend primarily upon its earnings, financial condition, and need for funds, as well as applicable governmental policies. Even if we have earnings in an amount sufficient to pay dividends, the Bank's board of directors may determine to retain earnings for the purpose of funding growth.

There are various legal limitations with respect to the Bank's ability to pay dividends to the Company and the Company's ability to pay dividends to shareholders. Under the Louisiana law, we may not pay a dividend if (i) after giving it effect, either of the following conditions would exist (A) the Company would not be able to pay its debts as they become due in the usual course of business, or (B) the Company's total assets would be less than the sum of its total liabilities plus, unless the articles of incorporation permit otherwise, the amount that would be needed, if the Company were to be dissolved at the time of the distribution, to satisfy the preferential rights upon dissolution of shareholders whose preferential rights are superior to those receiving the dividend; or (ii) the declaration or payment thereof would be contrary to any restrictions contained in our articles of incorporation. Under federal banking law, the prior approval of the Federal Reserve Board and the OCC may be required in certain circumstances prior to the payment of dividends by us or the Bank. A national bank may generally declare a dividend, without approval from the OCC, in an amount equal to its year-to-date net income plus the prior two years' net income that is still available for dividend. The OCC has the authority to prohibit a national bank from paying dividends if such payment is deemed to be an unsafe or unsound practice. Due to the loss reported for the year ended December 31, 2017, the Bank does not have the ability to approve dividends to the Company without prior approval from the OCC. In addition, as a depository institution the deposits of which are insured by the FDIC, the Bank may not pay dividends or distribute any of its capital assets while it remains in default on any assessment due to the FDIC. The Bank currently is not in default under any of its obligations to the FDIC.

The Federal Reserve Board has issued a policy statement regarding the payment of dividends by bank holding companies. In general, the Federal Reserve Board's policy provides that dividends should be paid only out of current earnings and only if the prospective rate of earnings retention by the bank holding company appears consistent with the organization's capital needs, asset quality and overall financial condition. The Federal Reserve Board has the authority to prohibit us from paying dividends if such payment is deemed to be an unsafe or unsound practice.

In addition, pursuant to the terms of our Series B Preferred Stock, Series C Preferred Stock, and the terms of our trust preferred securities, we are prohibited from paying dividends on our common stock during any period in which we

have deferred interest payments on either the Series B Preferred Stock, Series C Preferred Stock or the trust preferred securities.

- 28 -

---

The following graph compares the cumulative total return on our common stock over a period beginning December 31, 2012 with (1) the cumulative total return on the stocks included in the Russell 3000 and (2) the cumulative total return on the stocks included in the SNL Securities, LC (“SNL”) \$1B - \$5B Bank Index. The comparison assumes an investment in our common stock on the indices of \$100 at December 31, 2012 and assumes that all dividends were reinvested during the applicable period.

MidSouth Bancorp, Inc.

| Index                  | Period Ending |            |            |            |            |            |
|------------------------|---------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
|                        | 12/31/2012    | 12/31/2013 | 12/31/2014 | 12/31/2015 | 12/31/2016 | 12/31/2017 |
| MidSouth Bancorp, Inc. | 100.00        | 111.40     | 110.25     | 59.40      | 92.16      | 91.55      |
| Russell 3000           | 100.00        | 133.55     | 150.32     | 151.04     | 170.28     | 206.26     |
| SNL Bank \$1B-\$5B     | 100.00        | 145.41     | 152.04     | 170.20     | 244.85     | 261.04     |

The stock price information shown above is based on historical data and should not be considered indicative of future price performance.

## Item 6 – Five Year Summary of Selected Financial Data

|  | At and For the Year Ended December 31,        |             |             |             |             |   |
|--|---|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|---|
|  | 2017  | 2016        | 2015        | 2014        | 2013        |   |
|  | (dollars in thousands, except per share data) |             |             |             |             |   |
| Interest income                                      | \$80,623                                      | \$78,030    | \$81,897    | \$83,487    | \$83,203    |   |
| Interest expense                                     | (6,026 )                                      | (5,690 )    | (5,581 )    | (5,807 )    | (6,539 )    |   |
| Net interest income                                  | 74,597  | 72,340      | 76,316      | 77,680      | 76,664      |   |
| Provision for loan losses                            | (30,200 )                                     | (10,600 )   | (13,900 )   | (5,625 )    | (3,050 )    |   |
| Noninterest income                                   | 21,781  | 20,106      | 20,321      | 24,422      | 19,319      |   |
| Noninterest expenses                                 | (80,537 )                                     | (68,550 )   | (67,137 )   | (70,009 )   | (72,606 )   |   |
| (Loss) earnings before income taxes                  | (14,359 )                                     | 13,296      | 15,600      | 26,468      | 20,327      |   |
| Income tax benefit (expense)                         | 2,598   | (3,857 )    | (4,583 )    | (7,358 )    | (6,151 )    |   |
| Net (loss) earnings                                  | \$(11,761 )                                   | \$9,439     | \$11,017    | \$19,110    | \$14,176    |   |
| Dividends on preferred stock                         | (3,242 )                                      | (2,861 )    | (687 )      | (698 )      | (1,332 )    |   |
| Net (loss) earnings available to common stockholders | \$(15,003 )                                   | \$6,578     | \$10,330    | \$18,412    | \$12,844    |   |
| Basic (loss) earnings per common share               | \$(1.06 )                                     | \$0.58      | \$0.91      | \$1.63      | \$1.14      |   |
| Diluted (loss) earnings per common share             | \$(1.06 )                                     | \$0.58      | \$0.90      | \$1.58      | \$1.12      |   |
| Dividends per common share                           | \$0.20  | \$0.36      | \$0.36      | \$0.35      | \$0.31      |   |
| Total loans  | \$1,183,426                                   | \$1,284,082 | \$1,263,645 | \$1,284,431 | \$1,137,554 |   |
| Total assets   | 1,881,152                                     | 1,943,340   | 1,927,733   | 1,936,740   | 1,851,160   |   |
| Total deposits                                       | 1,479,689                                     | 1,579,430   | 1,550,850   | 1,585,234   | 1,518,803   |   |
| Long-term obligations                                | 32,188  | 47,591      | 48,018      | 48,444      | 57,087      |   |
| Selected ratios:                                     |   |             |             |             |             |   |
| Loans to assets                                      | 62.91   | % 66.08     | % 65.55     | % 66.32     | % 61.45     | % |
| Loans to deposits                                    | 79.98   | % 81.30     | % 81.48     | % 81.02     | % 74.90     | % |
| Deposits to assets                                   | 78.66   | % 81.27     | % 80.45     | % 81.85     | % 82.05     | % |
| Return on average assets                             | (0.78 )                                       | % 0.34      | % 0.53      | % 0.97      | % 0.69      | % |
| Return on average common equity                      | (7.32 )                                       | % 3.73      | % 6.00      | % 11.43     | % 8.64      | % |

## Item 7 – Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

The purpose of this discussion and analysis is to highlight changes in the financial condition of the Company and on its results of operations during 2017, 2016 and 2015. This discussion and analysis is intended to highlight and supplement information presented elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K, particularly the consolidated financial statements and related notes appearing in Item 8.

## Overview

We are a bank holding company, headquartered in Lafayette, Louisiana, that through our community banking subsidiary, MidSouth Bank, N.A., operates 48 offices in Louisiana and Texas. We had approximately \$1.9 billion in consolidated assets as of December 31, 2017. We derive the majority of our income from interest received on our loans and investments. Our primary source of funds for making these loans and investments is our deposits, on which we pay interest. Approximately 71.8% of our total deposits are interest-bearing. Consequently, one of the key measures of our success is our amount of net interest income, or the difference between the income on our interest-earning assets, such as loans and investments, and the expense on our interest-bearing liabilities, such as

deposits and borrowings. The resulting ratio of that difference as a percentage of our average earning assets represents our net interest margin. Another key measure is the spread between the yield we earn on these interest-earning assets and the rate we pay on our interest-bearing liabilities, which is called our net interest spread. In addition to earning

- 30 -

---

interest on our loans and investments, we earn income through fees and other charges to our customers. We have also included a discussion of the various components of this noninterest income, as well as of our noninterest expense.

There are risks inherent in all loans, so we maintain an allowance for loan losses to absorb probable losses on existing loans that may become uncollectible. We maintain this allowance by charging a provision for loan losses against our operating earnings for each period. We have included a detailed discussion of this process, as well as several tables describing our allowance for loan losses.

The economy in a large portion of our market areas is heavily dependent on the oil and gas industry. Over the past several years, we have experienced sustained low oil and gas prices that has led to an increase in our classified assets. While most of our customers are not directly involved in oil and gas exploration, many of our customers provide transportation and other services and products that support oil and gas exploration and production activities and are therefore indirectly impacted by low commodity prices. In addition, these adverse developments in the oil and gas industry have had negative effects on the economies of our market areas in general, including adverse effects on commercial and residential real estate values and the general level of economic activity. The oil and gas industry, especially in Louisiana and Texas, has historically been subject to significant volatility, and these market areas have experienced a slower recovery from this current economic cycle which has adversely impacted the Bank's customers and their ability to recover from this downturn. As of December 31, 2017, we had approximately \$179.7 million in loans to borrowers in the oil and gas industry representing approximately 15.2% of our total loans outstanding as of that date, which represents a reduction of \$57.7 of these types of loans, or 24%, since December 31, 2016, and we continue to make efforts to reduce our concentrations in these loans.

The Company and the Bank have both been placed in troubled condition by their respective federal banking regulators. The Bank has also entered into a written agreement with the OCC. These designations and the written agreement subject us to significant restrictions and will require us to designate a significant amount of resources to comply. See Part I, Item 1 under the heading "Business - Supervision and Regulation - Troubled Condition and Written Agreement" for additional information.

The following discussion and analysis also identifies significant factors that have affected our financial position and operating results during the periods included in the financial statements accompanying or incorporated by reference in this report. We encourage you to read this discussion and analysis in conjunction with our consolidated financial statements and the notes thereto and other statistical information included and incorporated by reference in this annual report on Form 10-K.

#### Critical Accounting Policies

Certain critical accounting policies affect the more significant judgments and estimates used in the preparation of the consolidated financial statements. Our significant accounting policies are described in the notes to the consolidated financial statements included in this report. The accounting principles we follow and the methods of applying these principles conform to accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America ("GAAP") and general banking practices. Our most critical accounting policy relates to the determination of the allowance for loan losses, which reflects the estimated losses resulting from the inability of its borrowers to make loan payments. The determination of the adequacy of the allowance involves significant judgment and complexity and is based on many factors. If the financial condition of our borrowers were to deteriorate, resulting in an impairment of their ability to make payments, the estimates would be updated and additional provisions for loan losses may be required. See Asset Quality – Allowance for Loan Losses and Note 1 and Note 3 of the notes to the consolidated financial statements.

Another of our critical accounting policies relates to the valuation of goodwill, intangible assets and other purchase accounting adjustments. We account for acquisitions in accordance with ASC Topic No. 805, which requires the use

of the purchase method of accounting. Under this method, we are required to record assets acquired and liabilities assumed at their fair value, including intangible assets. Determination of fair value involves estimates based on internal valuations of discounted cash flow analyses performed, third party valuations, or other valuation techniques that involve subjective assumptions. Additionally, the term of the useful lives and appropriate amortization periods of intangible assets is subjective. Resulting goodwill from an acquisition under the purchase method of accounting represents the excess of the purchase price over the fair value of net assets acquired. Goodwill is not amortized, but is evaluated for impairment annually or more frequently if deemed necessary. If the fair value of an asset exceeds the carrying amount of the asset, no charge to goodwill is made. If the carrying amount exceeds the fair value of the asset, goodwill will be adjusted through a charge to earnings. In evaluating the goodwill on our consolidated balance sheet for impairment at December 31, 2017, we first assessed qualitative factors to determine whether it is more likely than not that the fair value of our acquired assets is less than the carrying amount of the acquired assets, as allowed under ASU 2011-08, Intangibles- Goodwill and Other (Topic 350): Testing Goodwill for Impairment. After making the assessment based on several

- 31 -

---



factors, which included but was not limited to the current economic environment, the economic outlook in our markets, our financial performance and common stock value as compared to our peers, we determined it is more likely than not that the fair value of our acquired assets is greater than the carrying amount and, accordingly, no impairment of goodwill was recorded for the year ended December 31, 2017.

Given the instability of the economic environment, it is reasonably possible that the methodology of the assessment of potential loan losses and goodwill impairment could change in the near-term or could result in impairment going forward.

Another of our critical accounting policies relates to deferred tax assets and liabilities. We record deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities for future tax consequences attributable to differences between the financial statement carrying amounts of existing assets and liabilities and their respective tax bases. Future tax benefits, such as net operating loss carry forwards, are recognized to the extent that realization of such benefits is more likely than not. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are measured using enacted tax rates expected to apply to taxable income in the years in which the assets and liabilities are expected to be recovered or settled. The effect on deferred tax assets and liabilities of a change in tax rates is recognized in income tax expense in the period that includes the enactment date. In the event the future tax consequences of differences between the financial reporting bases and the tax bases of our assets and liabilities results in deferred tax assets, an evaluation of the probability of being able to realize the future benefits indicated by such assets is required. A valuation allowance is provided when it is more likely than not that a portion or the full amount of the deferred tax asset will not be realized. In assessing the ability to realize the deferred tax assets, management considers the scheduled reversals of deferred tax liabilities, projected future taxable income, and tax planning strategies. A deferred tax liability is not recognized for portions of the allowance for loan losses for income tax purposes in excess of the financial statement balance. Such a deferred tax liability will only be recognized when it becomes apparent that those temporary differences will reverse in the foreseeable future. A tax position is recognized as a benefit only if it is "more likely than not" that the tax position would be sustained in a tax examination, with a tax examination being presumed to occur. The amount recognized is the largest amount of tax benefit that is greater than 50 percent more likely of being realized on examination. For tax positions not meeting the "more likely than not" test, no tax benefit is recorded. The 2017 Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (the "Tax Act") enacted on December 22, 2017 resulted in the Company applying a new lower federal income tax rate (21%) to the Company's deferred tax assets and liabilities recorded as of December 31, 2017. The Company recorded a \$3.6 million adjustment to income tax expense to revalue its deferred tax assets and liabilities at the new income tax rate.

## Results of Operations

Net loss available to common stockholders for the year ended December 31, 2017 totaled \$15.0 million compared to net earnings available to common shareholders of \$6.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. A loss of \$1.06 per diluted share was reported for the year ended December 31, 2017, compared to diluted earnings per common share of \$0.58 for 2016. The 2017 net loss included \$347,000 of gain on sales of securities, \$744,000 of gain on sale of branches, \$1.5 million of severance and retention accruals, \$465,000 of one-time charges related to discontinued branch projects, \$903,000 of one-time charges related to the closure of branches, a \$1.4 million write-down of assets held for sale, a \$6.0 million loss on transfer of loans to held for sale, \$2.6 million of regulatory remediation costs and a \$3.6 million write-down of our net deferred tax asset resulting from the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act. Excluding these non-operating items, net loss available to common shareholders decreased \$10.3 million in year-over-year comparison. A \$19.6 million increase in provision for loan losses and a \$381,000 increase in dividends on preferred stock were partially offset by a \$2.8 million increase in operating revenues, a \$910,000 decrease in noninterest expenses and a \$5.9 million decrease in income tax expense.

Total consolidated assets remained constant at \$1.9 billion for the years ended December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016. Deposits totaled \$1.5 billion at December 31, 2017 compared to \$1.6 billion at December 31, 2016. Our stable

core deposit base, which excludes time deposits, totaled \$1.3 billion at December 31, 2017 and accounted for 87.7% of deposits at December 31, 2017 compared to 90.4% of deposits at year end 2016. Time deposits increased \$30.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. Net loans decreased \$103.2 million, or 8.2%, for the year ended December 31, 2017 and totaled \$1.2 billion at December 31, 2017.

Our Tier 1 leverage capital ratio was 12.53% at December 31, 2017 compared to 10.11% at December 31, 2016. Tier 1 risk-weighted capital and total risk-weighted capital ratios were 16.51% and 17.77% at December 31, 2017, compared to 13.02% and 14.28% at December 31, 2016, respectively. Our Tier 1 common equity ratio at December 31, 2017 was 12.10%, compared to 8.81% at December 31, 2016. The changes in regulatory capital levels are primarily attributable to the 5,100,034 shares of common stock issued in connection with the capital raise during the second quarter of 2017 that resulted in net proceeds to the Company of \$57.2 million. Return on average common equity was -7.32% for 2017 compared to 3.73% for 2016. Return on average assets was -0.78% compared to 0.34% for the same periods, respectively.

- 32 -

---

Nonperforming assets totaled \$57.3 million at December 31, 2017, a decrease of \$7.7 million over the \$65.0 million reported for year-end 2016. The decrease resulted from a \$12.8 million decrease in nonperforming loans, which was partially offset by a \$5.1 million increase in nonperforming loans held for sale. Nonaccrual loans totaled \$49.3 million at December 31, 2017 compared to \$62.6 million at December 31, 2016. Loans past due 90 days or more and still accruing interest totaled \$728,000 at December 31, 2017 compared to \$268,000 at December 31, 2016. Total nonperforming assets to total assets were 3.04% at December 31, 2017 compared to 3.35% at December 31, 2016. Loans classified as troubled debt restructurings (“TDRs”) totaled \$9.9 million at December 31, 2017 compared to \$25.3 million at December 31, 2016. These totals included \$8.6 million and \$25.1 million, respectively, of loans reported in nonaccrual loans.

Allowance coverage for nonperforming loans was 53.77% at December 31, 2017 compared to 38.78% at December 31, 2016. Year-to-date net charge-offs were 2.21% of average total loans as of December 31, 2017 compared to 0.41% as of December 31, 2016. The ALL/total loans ratio increased to 2.27% for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to 1.90% at December 31, 2016.

Table 1

## Summary of Return on Equity and Assets

|                                       | 2017     | 2016   | 2015   |
|---------------------------------------|----------|--------|--------|
| Return on average assets              | (0.78 )% | 0.34 % | 0.53 % |
| Return on average common equity       | (7.32 )% | 3.73 % | 6.00 % |
| Dividend payout ratio on common stock | (18.87)% | 62.07% | 40.00% |
| Average equity to average assets      | 12.75 %  | 11.25% | 10.91% |

NOTE: 2017 return on average assets and return on average common equity were impacted by a \$347,000 gain on sales of securities, a \$744,000 gain on sale of branches, \$1.5 million of severance and retention accruals, \$465,000 of one-time charges related to discontinued branch projects, \$903,000 of one-time charges related to the closure of branches, a \$1.4 million write-down of assets held for sale, a \$6.0 million loss on transfer of loans to held for sale, \$2.6 million of regulatory remediation costs and a \$3.6 million write-down of our net deferred tax asset resulting from the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act. Excluding these non-operating items, return on average assets for the year ended December 31, 2017 was -0.19% and return on average common equity for the year ended December 31, 2017 was -1.82%. 2015 return on average assets and return on average common equity were impacted by a \$1.2 million net gain on sale of securities and \$160,000 in income from a death benefit on bank owned life insurance. Excluding these non-operating items, return on average assets for the year ended December 31, 2015 was 0.48% and return on average common equity for the year ended December 31, 2015 was 5.44%.

## Earnings Analysis

## Net Interest Income

Our primary source of earnings is net interest income, which is the difference between interest earned on loans and investments and interest paid on deposits and other interest-bearing liabilities. Changes in the volume and mix of earning assets and interest-bearing liabilities combined with changes in market rates of interest greatly affect net interest income. Our net interest margin on a taxable equivalent basis, which is net interest income as a percentage of average earning assets, was 4.25%, 4.14%, and 4.28% for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively. Tables 2 and 3 analyze the changes in net interest income for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015.

Table 2  
Consolidated Average Balances, Interest, and Rates  
(in thousands)

|   | Year Ended December 31,<br>2017 |          |                           | 2016              |          |                           | 2015              |          |                           |
|---|---------------------------------|----------|---------------------------|-------------------|----------|---------------------------|-------------------|----------|---------------------------|
|   | Average<br>Volume               | Interest | Average<br>Yield/<br>Rate | Average<br>Volume | Interest | Average<br>Yield/<br>Rate | Average<br>Volume | Interest | Average<br>Yield/<br>Rate |
| <b>Assets</b>                                     |                                 |          |                           |                   |          |                           |                   |          |                           |
| <b>Investment securities<sup>1</sup></b>          |                                 |          |                           |                   |          |                           |                   |          |                           |
| Taxable   | \$372,523                       | \$9,180  | 2.46 %                    | \$352,865         | \$7,924  | 2.25 %                    | \$340,428         | \$7,559  | 2.22 %                    |
| Tax exempt <sup>2</sup>                           | 56,569                          | 2,283    | 4.04 %                    | 63,260            | 2,680    | 4.24 %                    | 74,836            | 3,342    | 4.47 %                    |
| Total investment securities                       | 429,092                         | 11,463   | 2.67 %                    | 416,125           | 10,604   | 2.55 %                    | 415,264           | 10,901   | 2.63 %                    |
| Federal funds sold                                | 3,979                           | 43       | 1.06 %                    | 3,364             | 16       | 0.47 %                    | 3,578             | 8        | 0.22 %                    |
| Time and interest bearing deposits in other banks | 71,754                          | 854      | 1.17 %                    | 76,328            | 399      | 0.51 %                    | 62,659            | 164      | 0.26 %                    |
| Other investments                                 | 11,790                          | 340      | 2.88 %                    | 11,254            | 351      | 3.12 %                    | 10,471            | 345      | 3.29 %                    |
| <b>Loans</b>                                      |                                 |          |                           |                   |          |                           |                   |          |                           |
| Commercial and real estate                        | 1,192,448                       | 64,294   | 5.39 %                    | 1,175,900         | 61,628   | 5.24 %                    | 1,185,788         | 63,637   | 5.37 %                    |
| Installment                                       | 63,040                          | 4,414    | 7.00 %                    | 87,825            | 5,956    | 6.78 %                    | 106,064           | 6,837    | 6.45 %                    |
| Total loans <sup>3</sup>                          | 1,255,488                       | 68,708   | 5.47 %                    | 1,263,725         | 67,584   | 5.35 %                    | 1,291,852         | 70,474   | 5.46 %                    |
| Total earning assets                              | 1,772,103                       | 81,408   | 4.59 %                    | 1,770,796         | 78,954   | 4.46 %                    | 1,783,824         | 81,892   | 4.59 %                    |
| Allowance for loan losses                         | (23,966 )                       |          |                           | (20,823 )         |          |                           | (15,127 )         |          |                           |
| Nonearning assets                                 | 181,401                         |          |                           | 185,252           |          |                           | 188,520           |          |                           |
| Total assets                                      | \$1,929,538                     |          |                           | \$1,935,225       |          |                           | \$1,957,217       |          |                           |
| <b>Liabilities and stockholders' equity</b>       |                                 |          |                           |                   |          |                           |                   |          |                           |
| NOW, money market, and savings                    | \$952,238                       | \$3,000  | 0.32 %                    | \$1,014,772       | \$2,913  | 0.29 %                    | \$943,615         | \$2,214  | 0.23 %                    |
| Time deposits                                     | 168,766                         | 1,099    | 0.65 %                    | 161,926           | 741      | 0.46 %                    | 226,188           | 1,373    | 0.61 %                    |
| Total interest-bearing deposits                   | 1,121,004                       | 4,099    | 0.37 %                    | 1,176,698         | 3,654    | 0.31 %                    | 1,169,803         | 3,587    | 0.31 %                    |
| Securities sold under agreements to repurchase    | 78,347                          | 685      | 0.87 %                    | 88,618            | 943      | 1.06 %                    | 84,622            | 961      | 1.14 %                    |
| Federal funds purchased                           | —                               | —        | — %                       | 1                 | —        | — %                       | 1                 | —        | — %                       |
| Short-term FHLB advances                          | 6,301                           | 77       | 1.20 %                    | 5,669             | 23       | 0.40 %                    | 27,959            | 56       | 0.20 %                    |
| Long-term FHLB advances                           | 24,390                          | 335      | 1.37 %                    | 25,633            | 366      | 1.40 %                    | 26,059            | 364      | 1.38 %                    |
| Junior subordinated debentures                    | 22,167                          | 830      | 3.69 %                    | 22,167            | 704      | 3.12 %                    | 22,167            | 613      | 2.73 %                    |
|   | 1,252,209                       | 6,026    | 0.48 %                    | 1,318,786         | 5,690    | 0.43 %                    | 1,330,611         | 5,581    | 0.42 %                    |

Edgar Filing: MIDSOUTH BANCORP INC - Form 10-K

|  |             |                 |             |                 |
|--|-------------|-----------------|-------------|-----------------|
| Total interest-bearing liabilities                       |             |                 |             |                 |
| Demand deposits  | 423,954     |                 | 390,585     | 405,571         |
| Other liabilities  | 7,372       |                 | 8,214       | 7,576           |
| Stockholders' equity                                     | 246,003     |                 | 217,640     | 213,459         |
| Total liabilities and stockholders' equity               | \$1,929,538 |                 | \$1,935,225 | \$1,957,217     |
| Net interest income and net interest spread <sup>4</sup> |             | \$75,382 4.11 % |             | \$73,264 4.03 % |
| Net interest margin                                      |             | 4.25 %          |             | 4.14 %          |
|  |             |                 |             | 4.28 %          |

<sup>1</sup> Securities classified as available-for-sale are included in average balances and interest income figures and reflect interest earned on such securities.

<sup>2</sup> Interest income of \$785,000 for 2017, \$924,000 for 2016, and \$1,154,000 for 2015 is added to interest earned on tax-exempt obligations to reflect tax-equivalent yields using a tax rate of 35%.

<sup>3</sup> Interest income includes loan fees of \$3,879,000 for 2017, \$4,932,000 for 2016, and \$5,170,000 for 2015. Nonaccrual loans are included in average balances and income on such loans is recognized on a cash basis.

<sup>4</sup> Net interest income includes accretion income of \$1,393,000 for 2017, \$1,857,000 for 2016, and \$2,342,000 for 2015.

Table 3  
Changes in Taxable-Equivalent Net Interest Income  
(in thousands)

|   | 2017 Compared to 2016     |                  |                 | 2016 Compared to 2015     |                  |                 |
|---|---------------------------|------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|------------------|-----------------|
|   | Total Increase (Decrease) | Change in Volume | Change in Rates | Total Increase (Decrease) | Change in Volume | Change in Rates |
| Taxable-equivalent interest earned on:            |                           |                  |                 |                           |                  |                 |
| Investment securities                             |                           |                  |                 |                           |                  |                 |
| Taxable   | \$1,256                   | \$420            | \$836           | \$365                     | \$278            | \$87            |
| Tax-exempt  | (397 )                    | (301 )           | (96 )           | (662 )                    | (497 )           | (165 )          |
| Federal funds sold                                | 27                        | 4                | 23              | 8                         | —                | 8               |
| Time and interest-bearing deposits in other banks | 455                       | (25 )            | 480             | 235                       | 42               | 193             |
| Other investments                                 | (11 )                     | 14               | (25 )           | 6                         | 25               | (19 )           |
| Loans, including fees                             | 1,124                     | (443 )           | 1,567           | (2,890 )                  | (1,638 )         | (1,252 )        |
| Total   | 2,454                     | (331 )           | 2,785           | (2,938 )                  | (1,790 )         | (1,148 )        |
| Interest paid on:                                 |                           |                  |                 |                           |                  |                 |
| Interest-bearing deposits                         | 445                       | (180 )           | 625             | 67                        | 18               | 49              |
| Securities sold under agreements to repurchase    | (258 )                    | (102 )           | (156 )          | (18 )                     | 43               | (61 )           |
| Short-term FHLB advances                          | 54                        | 3                | 51              | (33 )                     | (65 )            | 32              |
| Long-term FHLB advances                           | (31 )                     | (15 )            | (16 )           | 2                         | (3 )             | 5               |
| Junior subordinated debentures                    | 126                       | —                | 126             | 91                        | —                | 91              |
| Total   | 336                       | (294 )           | 630             | 109                       | (7 )             | 116             |
| Taxable-equivalent net interest income            | \$2,118                   | \$(37 )          | \$2,155         | \$(3,047)                 | \$(1,783)        | \$(1,264)       |

NOTE: Changes due to both volume and rate have generally been allocated to volume and rate changes in proportion to the relationship of the absolute dollar amounts to the changes in each.

In year-over-year comparison, FTE net interest income increased \$2.1 million primarily due to a \$1.1 million increase in interest income on loans and an \$859,000 increase in FTE interest income from investment securities. The average volume of investment securities increased \$13.0 million in year-over-year comparison, and the average yield on investment securities increased 12 basis points for the same period. The average volume of loans decreased \$8.2 million in year-over-year comparison, and the average yield on loans increased 12 basis points, from 5.35% to 5.47%. The average yield on earning assets increased 13 basis points in year-over-year comparison, from 4.46% at December 31, 2016 to 4.59% at December 31, 2017. Purchase accounting adjustments added 9 basis points to the average yield on loans for the year ended December 31, 2017 and 13 basis points for the year ended December 31, 2016. Net of purchase accounting adjustments, the average yield on earning assets increased 16 basis points, from 4.37% at December 31, 2016 to 4.53% at December 31, 2017. Interest expense increased \$336,000 in year-over-year comparison. Increases in interest expense included a \$445,000 increase in interest expense on deposits and a \$126,000 increase in interest expense on junior subordinated debentures. These increases were partially offset by a \$258,000 decrease in interest expense on repurchase agreements. The average rate paid on interest-bearing liabilities was 0.48% for the year ended December 31, 2017, compared to 0.43% for the year ended December 31, 2016. Purchase accounting adjustments added 3 basis points to the average rate paid on interest-bearing liabilities for the year ended December 31, 2017 and 2016. The FTE net interest margin increased 11 basis points, from 4.14% for the year ended December 31, 2016 to 4.25% for the year ended December 31, 2017. Net of purchase accounting adjustments, the FTE net interest margin increased 14 basis points, from 4.03% to 4.17% for the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2017, respectively.

FTE net interest income decreased \$3.0 million from 2015 to 2016 primarily due to a \$2.9 million decrease in interest income on loans. The average volume of loans decreased \$28.1 million in year-over-year comparison, and the average yield on loans decreased 11 basis points, from 5.46% to 5.35%. The average volume of investment securities increased \$861,000 in year-over-year comparison, and the average yield on investment securities decreased 8 basis points for the same period. The average yield on earning assets decreased in year-over-year comparison, from 4.59% at December 31, 2015 to 4.46% at December 31, 2016.

- 35 -

---

Purchase accounting adjustments added 12 basis points to the average yield on loans for the year ended December 31, 2016 and 17 basis points for the year ended December 31, 2015. Excluding purchase accounting adjustments, the average yield on earning assets decreased 10 basis points, from 4.47% at December 31, 2015 to 4.37% at December 31, 2016. Interest expense increased \$109,000 in year-over-year comparison. Increases in interest expense included a \$67,000 increase in interest expense on deposits and a \$91,000 increase in interest expense on junior subordinated debentures. These increases were partially offset by a \$33,000 decrease in interest expense on short-term FHLB advances and a \$18,000 decrease in interest expense on securities sold under agreements to repurchase. The average rate paid on interest-bearing liabilities was 0.43% for the year ended December 31, 2016, compared to 0.42% for the year ended December 31, 2015. Purchase accounting adjustments added 3 basis points to the average rate paid on interest-bearing liabilities for the year ended December 31, 2016 and 2015. The FTE net interest margin decreased 8 basis points, from 4.28% for the year ended December 31, 2015 to 4.20% for the year ended December 31, 2016. Excluding purchase accounting adjustments, the FTE net interest margin decreased 11 basis points, from 4.14% to 4.03% for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016, respectively, primarily due to a decline in the average rate earned on loans and the decreased average volume of loans.

#### Noninterest Income

Noninterest income totaled \$21.8 million at December 31, 2017 compared to \$20.1 million at December 31, 2016 and \$21.5 million at December 31, 2015. Our recurring non-interest income includes service charges and fees on deposit accounts, ATM and debit card income and mortgage lending income.

Table 4 presents noninterest income for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015.

Table 4

#### Noninterest Income (in thousands)

|   | Year Ended December 31, |          |          |
|---|-------------------------|----------|----------|
|   | 2017                    | 2016     | 2015     |
| Service charges on deposit accounts                 | \$9,724                 | \$9,883  | \$9,754  |
| ATM and debit card income                           | 6,912                   | 6,579    | 6,463    |
| Mortgage lending                                    | 627                     | 586      | 618      |
| Increase in cash value of life insurance            | 261                     | 315      | 331      |
| Credit card interchange and merchant-related income | 1,543                   | 1,437    | 1,540    |
| Letter of credit income                             | 6                       | 26       | 80       |
| Gain on securities, net (non-operating)             | 347                     | 20       | 1,243    |
| Gain on sale of branches (non-operating)            | 744                     | —        | —        |
| Income from death benefit on BOLI (non-operating)   | —                       | —        | 160      |
| Other   | 1,617                   | 1,260    | 1,291    |
| Total noninterest income                            | \$21,781                | \$20,106 | \$21,480 |

Income from service charges and fees on deposit accounts, including insufficient funds fees (“NSF” fees), decreased \$159,000 in 2017 and increased \$129,000 in 2016. ATM and debit card income increased \$333,000 in 2017 and \$116,000 in 2016. The increase in ATM and debit card income during 2017 and 2016 was a result of an increase in electronic transactions processed. Other noninterest income increased \$357,000 in 2017 and decreased \$31,000 in 2016. The increase in 2017 was primarily due to a \$231,000 increase in gain on sale of loans as well as a \$178,000 increase in check cashing income.

#### Noninterest Expense

Noninterest expense totaled \$80.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 compared to \$68.6 million and \$67.1 million for the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015, respectively. Our recurring non-interest expense consists of



salaries and employee benefits, occupancy expense, ATM and debit card expense and other operating expenses.

Table 5 presents noninterest expense for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015.

- 36 -

---

Table 5  
Noninterest Expense  
(in thousands)

|   | Year Ended December 31, |          |          |
|---|-------------------------|----------|----------|
|   | 2017                    | 2016     | 2015     |
| Salaries and employee benefits  | \$32,377                | \$32,932 | \$32,036 |
| Occupancy expense   | 13,851                  | 14,630   | 15,052   |
| ATM and debit card  | 2,721                   | 3,239    | 2,951    |
| Legal and professional fees   | 3,319                   | 1,855    | 1,560    |
| FDIC premiums   | 1,572                   | 1,601    | 1,513    |
| Marketing   | 1,197                   | 1,523    | 1,564    |
| Corporate development   | 1,016                   | 1,572    | 1,531    |
| Data processing   | 2,640                   | 1,963    | 1,888    |
| Printing and supplies   | 509                     | 760      | 923      |
| Expenses on ORE, net  | 517                     | 389      | 267      |
| Amortization of core deposit intangibles                                | 1,106                   | 1,107    | 1,106    |
| Severance and retention accruals (non-operating)                        | 1,512                   | —        | —        |
| One-time charge related to discontinued branch projects (non-operating) | 465                     | —        | —        |
| One-time charge related to closure of branches (non-operating)          | 903                     | —        | —        |
| Write-down of assets held for sale (non-operating)                      | 1,359                   | —        | —        |
| Loss on transfer of loans to held for sale (non-operating)              | 6,030                   | —        | —        |
| Regulatory remediation costs (non-operating)                            | 2,628                   | —        | —        |
| Other   | 6,815                   | 6,979    | 6,746    |
| Total noninterest expense   | \$80,537                | \$68,550 | \$67,137 |

Total noninterest expense increased 17.5%, or \$12.0 million, from 2016 to 2017 and increased 2.1%, or \$1.4 million, from 2015 to 2016. Nonoperating expenses in 2017 totaled \$12.9 million and consisted of \$1.5 million of severance and retention accruals, \$465,000 of one-time charges related to discontinued branch projects, \$903,000 of one-time charges related to the closure of branches, a \$1.4 million write-down of assets held for sale, a \$6.0 million loss on transfer of loans to held for sale and \$2.6 million of regulatory remediation costs.

Excluding non-operating expenses, salaries and employee benefits decreased \$555,000, or 1.7%, in 2017. The number of employees on a full-time equivalent ("FTE") basis decreased by 68 during 2017, from 535 at year end 2016 to 467 at year end 2017, which is primarily attributable to the closure and sale of 9 branches during 2017. Salaries and employee benefits increased \$896,000, or 2.8%, in 2016. The number of employees on a FTE basis decreased by one during 2016, from 536 at year end 2015 to 535 at year end 2016. The increase in salaries and benefits costs during 2016 was partially due to \$143,000 of sign-on bonuses related to recruiting new talent to the organization, including new producers in Texas and a new Chief Information Officer. Also contributing to the increase in salaries and employee benefits costs during 2016 was \$223,000 of severance benefits accrued and a \$349,000 increase in group health costs.

Excluding non-operating expenses, occupancy expenses decreased \$779,000 in 2017 and decreased \$422,000 in 2016. The decrease in 2017 was primarily due to the closure and sale of 9 branches during 2017. The decrease in 2016 was primarily the result of lower lease expense and lower depreciation expense. Premises and equipment additions and leasehold improvements totaled approximately \$3.8 million, \$5.8 million and \$5.4 million for the years 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively.

ATM and debit card processing fees decreased \$518,000 in 2017 and was primarily driven by a \$315,000 decrease in losses on ATM/debit card processing. ATM and debit card processing fees increased \$288,000 in 2016 and was

primarily driven by a \$231,000 increase in losses on ATM/debit card processing. Losses on ATM/debit card processing for the year ended December 31, 2015 included a \$55,000 insurance reimbursement for losses sustained in 2014. Excluding this insurance reimbursement, losses on ATM/debit card processing increased \$176,000 in 2016.

- 37 -

---

Excluding non-operating expenses, legal and professional fees increased \$1.5 million in 2017 and increased \$295,000 in 2016. The increase in 2017 was due to a \$904,000 increase in legal fees and a \$541,000 increase in outsourcing costs. The increase in legal fees is primarily due to the elevated level of non-performing loans. The increase in outsourcing costs is primarily due to costs related to internal audit services. The increase in 2016 was due to a \$127,000 increase in legal fees, an \$86,000 increase in consulting fees and an \$85,000 increase in outsourcing costs. The increase in legal fees during 2016 was primarily due to our elevated levels of non-performing loans.

A reclassification of certain hosted services subscriptions from corporate development into data processing at the beginning of 2017 caused the fluctuations in those two expense categories during 2017.

During 2017, we had \$12.9 million of non-operating noninterest expenses, including \$1.5 million of severance and retention accruals, \$465,000 of one-time charges related to discontinued branch projects, \$903,000 of one-time charges related to the closure of branches, a \$1.4 million write-down of assets held for sale, a \$6.0 million loss on transfer of loans to held for sale and \$2.6 million of regulatory remediation costs. Of the \$1.5 million of severance and retention accruals, \$1.0 million was the accrual of severance benefits resulting from the termination of an executive pursuant to an employment agreement. The remaining \$475,000 of severance and retention accruals were recorded in connection with the closure and sale of branches that occurred during 2017. Also recorded as a result of the closure of branches were \$903,000 of other charges, including lease termination costs and write-offs of leasehold improvements and furniture and equipment, and \$1.4 million in write-downs on those branches that were owned and moved to held for sale. During the fourth quarter of 2017, we transferred approximately \$15.7 million of loans to held for sale and recorded a \$6.0 million loss to write those loans down to fair value. The \$2.6 million of regulatory remediation costs incurred during 2017 were consulting and outsourcing costs for assistance in complying with terms of our regulatory written agreement.

Other noninterest expense decreased \$268,000 in 2017 and included decreases of \$159,000 in recruiting expense and \$180,000 in directors' fees. The decreased expenses were partially offset by increases of \$226,000 in appraisal fees and \$320,000 in provision for unfunded lines and letters of credit. Other smaller decreases also contributed to the overall decrease in other noninterest expenses.

Other noninterest expense increased \$233,000 in 2016 and consisted primarily of an increase of \$191,000 in recruiting expense.

#### Income Taxes

Income tax expense decreased \$6.5 million in 2017 and \$726,000 in 2016. The decrease in 2017 was due to the income tax benefit of \$2.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2017, compared with the income tax expense of \$3.9 million for the same period in 2016. During the fourth quarter of 2017, we increased our income tax provision by \$3.6 million to revalue our net deferred tax assets as a result of the federal corporate tax rate change. Our effective tax rate approximated 18%, 29%, and 29% in 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively. The effective tax rate for 2017 was impacted by the adjustment of our net deferred tax assets related to the reduction in the federal corporate tax rate under the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act. The impact of nontaxable municipal interest income and other tax considerations also contributed to lower effective tax rates for each of the three years presented in the Consolidated Statement of Earnings included in Item 8 of this filing. The notes to the consolidated financial statements provide additional information regarding income tax considerations.

#### Balance Sheet Analysis

##### Investment Securities

Total investment securities decreased \$49.8 million in 2017, from \$440.1 million in 2016 to \$390.2 million at December 31, 2017. The decrease resulted primarily from \$71.9 million in maturities and calls of securities and \$20.2

million in sales of securities, which were offset by \$45.9 million in purchases. Average duration of the portfolio was approximately 3.2 years as of December 31, 2017 and the average taxable-equivalent yield was 2.67%. For the year ended December 31, 2016, average duration of the portfolio was 3.2 years and the average taxable-equivalent yield was 2.55%. Unrealized net losses before tax effect in the securities available-for-sale portfolio were \$3.5 million at December 31, 2017, compared to \$2.5 million at December 31, 2016. These amounts resulted from interest rate fluctuations.

At December 31, 2017, approximately \$259.5 million, or 83.9%, of the securities available-for-sale portfolio represented mortgage-backed securities and CMOs. All of the mortgage-backed securities and CMOs are government agency sponsored with the exception of one privately issued CMO with a current market value of \$7,000. Risk due to changes in interest rates on mortgage-backed pools is monitored by monthly reviews of prepayment speeds, duration, and purchase yields as compared to current market yields on each security. CMOs totaled \$200.4 million and represented pools that each had a book value of less

than 10% of stockholders' equity at December 31, 2017. The mutual fund in the securities available-for-sale portfolio is a CRA Qualified Investment Fund. The CRA Fund is a market-rate bond fund that invests in high credit quality fixed income securities whose proceeds are designed to positively impact communities throughout the United States. The fair value of the security at December 31, 2017 totaled \$2.1 million. The fair value of our corporate debt securities at December 31, 2017 totaled \$24.8 million. Of this total, \$10.8 million represented senior debt instruments and \$14.0 represented subordinated debt instruments. An additional 7.4% of the available-for-sale portfolio consisted of municipal securities. At December 31, 2017, approximately \$45.1 million, or 55.7%, of the held-to-maturity portfolio represented mortgage-backed securities and CMOs. The remainder of the held-to-maturity portfolio, approximately \$35.9 million, consisted of municipal securities.

Additional information on our investment securities portfolio is provided in Note 2 of the notes to consolidated financial statements.

Table 6  
Carrying Value of Investment Securities  
December 31,  
(in thousands)

|  | 2017      | 2016      | 2015      | 2014      | 2013      |
|--|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Available-for-sale securities                    |           |           |           |           |           |
| U. S. Government sponsored enterprises           | \$—       | \$—       | \$—       | \$10,227  | \$11,265  |
| Obligations of state and political subdivisions  | 22,809    | 29,141    | 31,493    | 44,605    | 59,978    |
| GSE mortgage-backed securities                   | 59,124    | 73,578    | 87,038    | 109,103   | 145,965   |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: residential | 198,155   | 220,202   | 192,088   | 60,839    | 70,887    |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: commercial  | 2,240     | 3,082     | 5,448     | 24,545    | 27,346    |
| Other asset-backed securities                    | —         | —         | —         | 24,343    | 25,489    |
| Collateralized debt obligation                   | —         | —         | —         | 1,218     | 735       |
| Mutual funds                                     | 2,061     | 2,059     | 2,092     | 2,104     | —         |
| Corporate debt securities                        | 24,802    | 13,811    | —         | —         | —         |
| Total available-for-sale securities              | \$309,191 | \$341,873 | \$318,159 | \$276,984 | \$341,665 |
| Held-to-maturity securities                      |           |           |           |           |           |
| Obligations of state and political subdivisions  | \$35,908  | \$40,515  | \$43,737  | \$45,914  | \$47,377  |
| GSE mortgage-backed securities                   | 35,751    | 44,375    | 55,696    | 67,268    | 78,272    |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: residential | 7,450     | 8,969     | 10,803    | 12,709    | 14,189    |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: commercial  | 1,943     | 4,352     | 6,556     | 15,310    | 15,685    |
| Total held-to-maturity securities                | \$81,052  | \$98,211  | \$116,792 | \$141,201 | \$155,523 |
| Total investment securities                      | \$390,243 | \$440,084 | \$434,951 | \$418,185 | \$497,188 |

Table 7

## Investment Securities Portfolio

## Debt Security Maturities and Average Taxable-Equivalent Yields

At December 31, 2017

(dollars in thousands)

|  | Within 1 Year |       | After 1 but<br>Within 5<br>Years |       | After 5 but<br>Within 10<br>Years |       | After 10 Years |       | Total     |
|--|---------------|-------|----------------------------------|-------|-----------------------------------|-------|----------------|-------|-----------|
|  | Amount        | Yield | Amount                           | Yield | Amount                            | Yield | Amount         | Yield |           |
| Securities available-for-sale:                               |               |       |                                  |       |                                   |       |                |       |           |
| Obligations of state and political subdivisions <sup>1</sup> | \$1,136       | 6.02% | \$1,931                          | 6.43% | \$1,763                           | 3.42% | \$17,979       | 4.43% | \$22,809  |
| GSE mortgage-backs and CMOs: residential                     | —             | — %   | —                                | — %   | 23,399                            | 2.96% | 233,880        | 2.65% | 257,279   |
| CMOs: commercial   | —             | — %   | —                                | — %   | —                                 | —     | 2,240          | 2.01% | 2,240     |
| Corporate debt securities                                    | —             | — %   | 6,665                            | 5.89% | 18,137                            | 5.96% | —              | — %   | 24,802    |
| Total fair value   | \$1,136       |       | \$8,596                          |       | \$43,299                          |       | \$254,099      |       | \$307,130 |
| Held-to-Maturity:  |               |       |                                  |       |                                   |       |                |       |           |
| Obligations of state and political subdivisions <sup>1</sup> | \$1,201       | 2.59% | \$5,395                          | 2.73% | \$11,124                          | 3.31% | \$18,188       | 3.35% | \$35,908  |
| GSE mortgage-backs and CMOs: residential                     | —             | — %   | —                                | — %   | 30,661                            | 2.64% | 12,540         | 1.80% | 43,201    |
| CMOs: commercial   | —             | — %   | —                                | — %   | —                                 | — %   | 1,943          | 2.22% | 1,943     |
| Total cost   | \$1,201       |       | \$5,395                          |       | \$41,785                          |       | \$32,671       |       | \$81,052  |

<sup>1</sup> Tax exempt yields are expressed on a fully taxable equivalent basis.

## Loan Portfolio

The loan portfolio decreased \$100.7 million, or 7.8%, during 2017 primarily as a result of our focused efforts to decrease nonperforming loans, which also resulted in net charge-offs during 2017 of \$27.7 million. Decreases of \$32.7 million, \$26.3 million and \$24.4 million were in the commercial real estate, consumer, and commercial portfolios, respectively. There were also decreases of \$11.1 million and \$10.7 million in residential real estate and construction loan portfolios, respectively.

Our loan portfolio is diversified throughout our Louisiana and Texas markets, with a focus on C&I and CRE loans. Our C&I and CRE loans are primarily underwritten on cash flow analyses versus collateral valuations. The C&I portfolio consists primarily of term loans or revolving lines of credit which are generally structured with annual maturity. The term loans are generally structured with fixed rates and three to five year maturities. The CRE portfolio consists primarily of credits that have fifteen to twenty year amortization terms with rates fixed primarily for three years, but up to five years. We believe the shorter term structure of our C&I and CRE credits allows greater flexibility in controlling interest rate risk.

The loan portfolio at December 31, 2017 consisted of approximately 32.7% in fixed rate loans, with the majority maturing within five years. Approximately 67.3% of the portfolio earns a variable rate of interest, the greater majority of which adjusts simultaneous with changes in the Prime rate and a smaller portion that adjusts on a scheduled repricing date. The mix of variable and fixed rate loans provides some protection from changes in market rates of

interest. Additionally, we have established rate floors, primarily for our commercial loans, that provided some protection to our net interest margin during the current sustained low interest rate environment.

- 40 -

---



Table 8  
Composition of Loans  
December 31,  
(in thousands)

|   | 2017        | 2016        | 2015        | 2014        | 2013        |
|---|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| Commercial, financial, and agricultural | \$435,207   | \$459,574   | \$454,028   | \$467,147   | \$403,976   |
| Real estate – construction              | 90,287      | 100,959     | 74,952      | 68,577      | 82,691      |
| Real estate – commercial                | 448,406     | 481,155     | 471,141     | 467,172     | 397,135     |
| Real estate – residential               | 146,751     | 157,872     | 149,064     | 154,602     | 146,841     |
| Installment loans to individuals        | 56,398      | 82,660      | 111,009     | 119,328     | 97,459      |
| Lease financing receivable              | 732         | 1,095       | 1,968       | 4,857       | 5,542       |
| Other                                   | 5,645       | 767         | 1,483       | 2,748       | 3,910       |
| Total loans                             | \$1,183,426 | \$1,284,082 | \$1,263,645 | \$1,284,431 | \$1,137,554 |

Table 9  
Loan Maturities and Sensitivity to Interest Rates  
For the Year Ended December 31, 2017  
(in thousands)

|   | Fixed and Variable Rate Loans at Stated Maturities |                  |              |             | Amounts Over One Year With |                |             |
|---|--|------------------|--------------|-------------|----------------------------|----------------|-------------|
|   | 1 Year or Less                                     | 1 Year – 5 Years | Over 5 years | Total       | Predetermined Rates        | Floating Rates | Total       |
| Commercial, financial, and agricultural | \$35,680   | \$321,201        | \$78,326     | \$435,207   | \$150,383                  | \$249,144      | \$399,527   |
| Real estate – construction              | 1,440  | 62,889           | 25,958       | 90,287      | 37,462                     | 51,385         | 88,847      |
| Real estate – commercial                | 4,149  | 80,294           | 363,963      | 448,406     | 84,930                     | 359,327        | 444,257     |
| Real estate – residential               | 1,838  | 28,863           | 116,050      | 146,751     | 52,974                     | 91,939         | 144,913     |
| Installment loans to individuals        | 6,255  | 39,743           | 10,400       | 56,398      | 41,410                     | 8,733          | 50,143      |
| Lease financing receivable              | —  | 124              | 608          | 732         | 732                        | —              | 732         |
| Other                                   | 291  | 407              | 4,947        | 5,645       | 493                        | 4,861          | 5,354       |
| Total                                   | \$49,653   | \$533,521        | \$600,252    | \$1,183,426 | \$368,384                  | \$765,389      | \$1,133,773 |

## Asset Quality

### Credit Risk Management

We manage credit risk by observing written, board approved policies that govern all underwriting activities. Our Chief Credit Officer (“CCO”) is responsible for credit underwriting as well as management of classified and criticized assets for the Bank. The role of CCO includes on-going review and development of lending policies, commercial credit analysis, centralized consumer underwriting, loan operations documentation and funding, and overall credit risk management procedures. The current risk management process requires that each individual loan officer review his or her portfolio on a quarterly basis and assign recommended credit ratings on each loan. These efforts are supplemented by reviews performed by an independent loan reviewer and other validations performed by the internal audit department. Completed loan applications, credit bureau reports, financial statements, and a committee approval process remain a part of credit decisions. Documentation of the loan decision process is required on each credit application, whether approved or denied, to ensure thorough and consistent procedures.

Our loan review process also includes monitoring and reporting of loan concentrations whereby individual customer and aggregate industry leverage, profitability, risk rating distributions, and liquidity are evaluated for each major standard industry classification segment. At December 31, 2017, one industry segment concentration, the oil and gas industry, aggregated more than 10% of our loan portfolio. We define an energy loan as any loan where the borrower's

ability to repay is disproportionately impacted by a prolonged downturn in energy prices. Under this definition, the Bank includes direct C&I loans to energy borrowers, as well as CRE loans, Residential Real Estate loans and loans to energy-related borrowers where the loan's primary collateral is cash and marketable securities. Although this definition has resulted in a lack of comparability with some other energy-related

- 41 -

---

banks, management believes it to be the prudent approach to monitoring and managing the Bank's energy exposure. Our exposure in the oil and gas industry, as defined above, totaled approximately \$179.7 million, or 15.2% of total loans. The average loan size is approximately \$419,000, and the average loan size per relationship is roughly \$563,000. Of the \$179.7 million to borrowers in the oil and gas industry, \$35.8 million or 19.9% were on nonaccrual status at December 31, 2017. We are closely monitoring the effects of the sustained decline in oil prices on our energy related loan portfolio. We continue to communicate with our customers who provide valuable insight on the present energy cycle. The energy reserve as a percentage of total energy loans was 6.6% at December 31, 2017. Energy-related charge-offs during 2017 totaled \$12.7 million.

The federal banking agencies, including the OCC, have promulgated guidance governing financial institutions with concentrations in commercial real estate lending. The guidance provides that a bank has a concentration in commercial real estate lending if (1) total reported loans for construction, land development and other land represent 100% or more of total capital or (2) total reported loans secured by multifamily and non-farm residential properties and loans for construction, land development and other land represent 300% or more of total capital. Owner occupied loans are excluded from this second category. We monitor our exposure to each of these segments to ensure the concentration is consistent with our risk tolerance. At December 31, 2017, loans for construction, land development and other land totaled approximately \$90.3 million, or 45% of our bank's risk-based capital. Loans secured by multifamily and non-farm residential properties and loans for construction, land development and other land totaled approximately \$260.9 million at December 31, 2017, or 129% of our bank's risk-based capital.

#### Nonperforming Assets

Table 10 contains information about nonperforming assets, including loans past due 90 days or greater ("90 days or >") and still accruing.

Table 10  
Asset Quality Information  
December 31,  
(dollars in thousands)

|  | 2017     | 2016     | 2015     | 2014     | 2013     |   |
|--|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|---|
| Loans on nonaccrual  | \$49,278 | \$62,580 | \$50,051 | \$10,701 | \$5,099  |   |
| Loans past due 90 days or > and still accruing                     | 728      | 268      | 147      | 187      | 178      |   |
| Total nonperforming loans  | 50,006   | 62,848   | 50,198   | 10,888   | 5,277    |   |
| Nonperforming loans held for sale                                  | 5,067    | —        | —        | —        | —        |   |
| Other real estate owned  | 2,001    | 2,175    | 4,187    | 4,234    | 6,687    |   |
| Other assets repossessed   | 192      | 16       | 38       | —        | 20       |   |
| Total nonperforming assets   | \$57,266 | \$65,039 | \$54,423 | \$15,122 | \$11,984 |   |
| Troubled debt restructurings, accruing <sup>(1)</sup>              | \$1,360  | \$152    | \$164    | \$176    | \$179    |   |
| Nonperforming loans to total loans + ORE + other foreclosed assets | 4.83     | % 5.06   | % 4.29   | % 1.17   | % 1.05   | % |
| Nonperforming assets to total assets                               | 3.04     | % 3.35   | % 2.82   | % 0.78   | % 0.65   | % |
| ALLL to nonperforming loans  | 53.77    | % 38.78  | % 37.87  | % 103.10 | % 166.36 | % |
| ALLL to total loans  | 2.27     | % 1.90   | % 1.50   | % 0.87   | % 0.77   | % |

<sup>(1)</sup>Does not include \$8.6 million, \$25.1 million, \$20.9 million, \$234,000 and \$233,000 of TDRs reported in nonaccrual loans at December 31, 2017, 2016, 2015, 2014 and 2013, respectively.

Nonperforming assets totaled \$57.3 million at December 31, 2017, a decrease of \$7.7 million over the \$65.0 million reported for year-end 2016. The decrease resulted primarily from a \$13.3 million decrease in nonaccrual loans, which was partially offset by a \$5.1 million increase in nonperforming loans held for sale at December 31, 2017. The allowance coverage for nonperforming loans increased during 2017, from 38.78% at December 31, 2016 to 53.77% at

December 31, 2017. Classified assets, including ORE, decreased \$16.0 million or 11.9%, from \$134.2 million at December 31, 2016 to \$118.2 million at December 31, 2017. The decrease in classified assets was primarily due to the payoffs as well as charge-offs of loans in addition to the write down of some classified loans to fair value when they were transferred to held for sale. Year-to-date net charge-offs were 2.26% of average total loans as of December 31, 2017 compared to 0.41% as of December 31, 2016. The ALL/total loans ratio improved by 37 basis points to 2.27% at December 31, 2017 compared to 1.90% at December 31, 2016 as a result of a \$30.2 million provision for loan losses recorded during the year ended December 31, 2017.

Loans classified as TDRs totaled \$9.9 million at December 31, 2017 compared to \$25.3 million at December 31, 2016. These totals included \$8.6 million and \$25.1 million, respectively, of loans reported in nonaccrual loans. The decrease in loans from December 31, 2016 was primarily the result of \$6.7 million in charge-offs of TDRs during 2017 as well as the payoff of \$10.6 of TDRs during the year. These decreases were partially offset by \$2.0 million of loans identified as TDRs during the year. Additional information regarding impaired loans and TDRs is included in the notes to the consolidated financial statements.

Consumer and commercial loans are placed on nonaccrual status when principal or interest is 90 days past due, or sooner if the full collectibility of principal or interest is doubtful, except if the underlying collateral fully supports both the principal and accrued interest and the loan is in the process of collection. Our policy provides that unsecured retail (consumer) loans that become 90 days delinquent be routinely charged off. Loans classified for regulatory purposes but not included in Table 10 do not represent material amounts that we have serious doubts as to the ability of the borrower to comply with loan repayment terms. Further information regarding loan policy is provided in the notes to the consolidated financial statements.

#### Allowance for Loan Losses

Provisions totaling \$30.2 million, \$10.6 million, and \$13.9 million, for the years 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively, were considered necessary to bring the allowance for loan losses to a level we believe sufficient to cover probable losses in the loan portfolio. Table 11 analyzes activity in the allowance for 2017, 2016, 2015, 2014, and 2013.

Table 11

#### Summary of Loan Loss Experience

For the Year Ended December 31,

(dollars in thousands)

|  | 2017     | 2016     | 2015     | 2014     | 2013    |   |
|--|----------|----------|----------|----------|---------|---|
| Balance at beginning of year                         | \$24,372 | \$19,011 | \$11,226 | \$8,779  | \$7,370 |   |
| Charge-offs:   |          |          |          |          |         |   |
| Commercial, financial, and agricultural              | 20,451   | 4,366    | 4,936    | 2,843    | 935     |   |
| Real estate – construction                           | 70       | —        | 105      | 1        | —       |   |
| Real estate – commercial                             | 6,648    | 218      | 183      | 93       | 18      |   |
| Real estate – residential                            | 543      | 24       | 87       | 273      | 129     |   |
| Installment loans to individuals                     | 1,165    | 1,407    | 1,263    | 706      | 824     |   |
| Total charge-offs                                    | 28,877   | 6,015    | 6,574    | 3,916    | 1,906   |   |
| Recoveries:  |          |          |          |          |         |   |
| Commercial, financial, and agricultural              | 652      | 459      | 235      | 164      | 80      |   |
| Real estate – construction                           | —        | —        | 3        | —        | 8       |   |
| Real estate – commercial                             | 162      | 123      | 26       | 407      | 29      |   |
| Real estate – residential                            | 105      | 5        | 12       | 47       | 39      |   |
| Installment loans to individuals                     | 274      | 189      | 183      | 120      | 109     |   |
| Total recoveries                                     | 1,193    | 776      | 459      | 738      | 265     |   |
| Net charge-offs                                      | 27,684   | 5,239    | 6,115    | 3,178    | 1,641   |   |
| Additions to allowance charged to operating expenses | 30,200   | 10,600   | 13,900   | 5,625    | 3,050   |   |
| Balance at end of year                               | \$26,888 | \$24,372 | \$19,011 | \$11,226 | \$8,779 |   |
| Net charge-offs to average loans                     | 2.26     | % 0.41   | % 0.47   | % 0.26   | % 0.15  | % |
| Year-end allowance to year-end loans                 | 2.27     | % 1.90   | % 1.50   | % 0.87   | % 0.77  | % |

Table 12  
Allocation of Loan Loss by Category  
December 31,  
(dollars in thousands)

|   | 2017     |                                       | 2016     |                                       | 2015     |                                       | 2014     |                                       | 2013    |                                       |
|---|----------|---------------------------------------|----------|---------------------------------------|----------|---------------------------------------|----------|---------------------------------------|---------|---------------------------------------|
|   | Amount   | % of<br>loans<br>to<br>total<br>loans | Amount   | % of<br>loans<br>to<br>total<br>loans | Amount   | % of<br>loans<br>to<br>total<br>loans | Amount   | % of<br>loans<br>to<br>total<br>loans | Amount  | % of<br>loans<br>to<br>total<br>loans |
| Commercial, financial, and agricultural | \$20,577 | 36.8                                  | \$16,057 | 35.8                                  | \$11,268 | 35.9                                  | \$5,729  | 36.4                                  | \$3,906 | 35.5                                  |
| Real estate - construction              | 596      | 7.6                                   | 585      | 7.8                                   | 819      | 5.9                                   | 954      | 5.3                                   | 1,046   | 7.3                                   |
| Real estate - commercial                | 3,893    | 37.9                                  | 5,384    | 37.5                                  | 4,614    | 37.3                                  | 2,402    | 36.4                                  | 1,389   | 34.9                                  |
| Real estate - residential               | 837      | 12.4                                  | 940      | 12.3                                  | 816      | 11.8                                  | 810      | 12.0                                  | 1,141   | 12.9                                  |
| Installment loans to individuals        | 957      | 4.8                                   | 1,395    | 6.4                                   | 1,468    | 8.8                                   | 1,311    | 9.3                                   | 1,273   | 8.6                                   |
| Lease financing receivable              | 3        | 0.1                                   | 5        | 0.1                                   | 14       | 0.2                                   | 16       | 0.4                                   | 21      | 0.5                                   |
| Other                                   | 25       | 0.4                                   | 6        | 0.1                                   | 12       | 0.1                                   | 4        | 0.2                                   | 3       | 0.3                                   |
|   | \$26,888 | 100.0                                 | \$24,372 | 100.0                                 | \$19,011 | 100.0                                 | \$11,226 | 100.0                                 | \$8,779 | 100.0                                 |

Net charge-offs during 2017 totaled \$27.7 million, compared to \$5.2 million during 2016 and \$6.1 million during 2015. The increase in net charge-offs during 2017 was primarily a result of energy related charge-offs totaling \$12.7 million during 2017 as well as charge-offs of two real estate loans unrelated to energy that totaled \$3.7 million.

Quarterly evaluations of the allowance for loan losses are performed in accordance with GAAP and regulatory guidelines. The allowance is comprised of specific reserves assigned to each impaired loan for which probable loss has been identified as well as general reserves to maintain the allowance at an acceptable level for other loans in the portfolio where historical loss experience is available that indicates certain probable losses may exist. Factors considered in determining provisions include estimated losses in significant credits; known deterioration in concentrations of credit; historical loss experience; trends in nonperforming assets; volume, maturity and composition of the loan portfolio; off-balance sheet credit risk; lending policies and control systems; national and local economic conditions; the experience, ability and depth of lending management; and the results of examinations of the loan portfolio by regulatory agencies and others. The processes by which we determine the appropriate level of the allowance, and the corresponding provision for probable credit losses, involves considerable judgment; therefore, no assurance can be given that future losses will not vary from current estimates. Additional information regarding the allowance for loan losses is included in the notes to the consolidated financial statements.

#### Funding Sources

##### Deposits

As of December 31, 2017, total deposits decreased \$99.7 million, or 6.3%, to \$1.5 billion following an increase of \$28.6 million in 2016. Noninterest-bearing deposits increased \$1.6 million in 2017 to \$416.5 million and represented 28.1% of total deposits at December 31, 2017, compared to 26.3% at December 31, 2016 and 24.1% at December 31, 2015. During 2017, interest-bearing deposits in money market and savings accounts decreased \$93.6 million and NOW account deposits decreased \$37.8 million. Time deposits, which are comprised mostly of certificates of deposits ("CDs"), increased \$30.1 million in 2017, which was primarily attributable to a \$45.8 million increase in brokered CDs. The increase in total deposits during 2016 resulted primarily from increases of \$40.7 million and \$8.4 million in noninterest-bearing deposits and money market and savings accounts, respectively. These decreases were partially offset by decreases of \$17.6 million and \$2.9 million in CDs and NOW accounts, respectively. Core deposits,

defined as all deposits other than time deposits, remained strong at 87.6% of total deposits at year-end 2017 compared to 90.4% of total deposits at year-end 2016. Core deposits totaled 89.1% of total deposits at year-end 2015. To manage the net interest margin and core deposit balances, we typically offer low- to mid-market rates on CDs. Additional information on deposits appears in the tables below and in the notes to the consolidated financial statements.

- 44 -

---

Table 13  
Summary of Average Deposits  
(in thousands)

|                                     | 2017        |         | 2016        |         | 2015        |         |
|-------------------------------------|-------------|---------|-------------|---------|-------------|---------|
|                                     | Average     | Average | Average     | Average | Average     | Average |
|                                     | Amount      | Yield   | Amount      | Yield   | Amount      | Yield   |
| Noninterest-bearing demand deposits | \$423,954   | —       | \$390,585   | —       | \$405,571   | —       |
| Interest-bearing deposits:          |             |         |             |         |             |         |
| Savings, NOW, and money market      | 952,238     | 0.32 %  | 1,014,772   | 0.29 %  | 943,615     | 0.23 %  |
| Time deposits                       | 168,766     | 0.65 %  | 161,926     | 0.46 %  | 226,188     | 0.61 %  |
| Total                               | \$1,544,958 | 0.27 %  | \$1,567,283 | 0.23 %  | \$1,575,374 | 0.23 %  |

Table 14  
Maturity Schedule Time Deposits of \$250,000 or More  
December 31,  
(in thousands)

|                                 | 2017     | 2016     | 2015     |
|---------------------------------|----------|----------|----------|
| 3 months or less                | \$8,346  | \$9,785  | \$10,765 |
| Over 3 months through 6 months  | 4,934    | 7,730    | 8,689    |
| Over 6 months through 12 months | 6,095    | 9,052    | 10,932   |
| Over 12 months                  | 6,610    | 5,244    | 7,059    |
| Total                           | \$25,985 | \$31,811 | \$37,445 |

#### Borrowed Funds

As of December 31, 2017, we had securities sold under repurchase agreements totaling \$67.1 million and no federal funds purchased. At December 31, 2016, we had \$94.5 million in securities sold under repurchase agreements and no federal funds purchased. Retail repurchase agreements, included in securities sold under agreements to repurchase, decreased \$14.9 million, from \$82.0 million at December 31, 2016 to \$67.1 million at December 31, 2017. Also included in securities sold under agreements to repurchase at December 31, 2016 was a \$12.5 million reverse repurchase agreement we entered into with Citigroup Markets, Inc. (“CGMI”) in July of 2007 to meet liquidity demands. Under the terms of the agreement, interest was payable at a fixed rate of 4.57% for the remainder of the term. The security was repurchased on August 9, 2017.

Long-term FHLB-Dallas advances totaled \$10.0 million at December 31, 2017, compared to \$25.4 million at December 31, 2016. Long-term FHLB advances at December 31, 2017 consisted of one advance that matures in January 2019 and bears a fixed interest rate of 1.985%. Short-term FHLB-Dallas advances totaled \$40.0 million at December 31, 2017. There were no short-term FHLB-Dallas advances outstanding at December 31, 2016. Short-term FHLB advances at December 31, 2017 consisted of two FHLB advances with a maturity of 1 month at a fixed interest rate of 1.59%. The FHLB advances are collateralized by a blanket lien on first mortgages and other qualifying loans.

A description of the junior subordinated debentures outstanding as of December 31, 2017 is as follows:

Table 15  
Junior Subordinated Debentures  
(dollars in thousands)

| Date Issued        | Maturity Date      | Interest Rate            | Callable After     | Amount  |
|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|---------|
| July 31, 2001      | July 9, 2031       | 3 month LIBOR plus 3.30% | July 31, 2006      | \$5,671 |
| September 20, 2004 | September 20, 2034 | 3 month LIBOR plus 2.50% | September 20, 2009 | 8,248   |
| October 12, 2006   | October 12, 2036   | 3 month LIBOR plus 1.85% | June 26, 2011      | 5,155   |
| June 21, 2007      | June 21, 2037      | 3 month LIBOR plus 1.70% | June 15, 2012      | 3,093   |



\$22,167

- 45 -

---

Our outstanding debentures currently qualify as Tier 1 capital and are presented in the Consolidated Balance Sheets as junior subordinated debentures. Additional information regarding long-term debt is provided in the notes to the consolidated financial statements.

Regulations adopted as a result of the Dodd-Frank Act have resulted in changes to the regulatory capital treatment of securities similar to our debentures. However, because of the issue date of our debentures and our asset size, we are allowed to continue to include the debentures in our Tier 1 capital.

In 2017, 2016, and 2015, we did not have an average balance in any category of short-term borrowings including retail repurchase agreements, reverse repurchase agreements, federal funds purchased, or FRB discount window that exceeded 30% of our stockholders' equity for such year.

### Capital

As described under "Business - Supervision and Regulation," we are required to maintain certain minimum capital levels for the Company and the Bank. Risk-based capital requirements are intended to make regulatory capital more sensitive to the risk profile of an institution's assets. In July 2013, the Federal Reserve and the OCC issued final rules establishing a new comprehensive capital framework for U.S. banking organizations that implement the Basel III capital framework and certain provisions of the Dodd-Frank Act. The final rules seek to strengthen the components of regulatory capital, increase risk-based capital requirements, and make selected changes to the calculation of risk-weighted assets. Details regarding the final rule and changes to capital requirements and prompt corrective action thresholds are included under Part I, Item 1 – Business, Supervision and Regulation. The final rules became effective as of January 1, 2015, for most banking organizations including the Company and the Bank, subject to a transition period for several aspects of the final rules, including the new minimum capital ratio requirements, the capital conservation buffer, and the regulatory capital adjustments and deductions. Requirements to maintain higher levels of capital could adversely impact our return on equity. We believe we will continue to exceed all estimated well-capitalized regulatory requirements under these new rules on a fully phased-in basis.

On June 13, 2017, the Company completed the sale of 4,583,334 shares of its common stock pursuant to an underwritten public offering, and on July 11, 2017, the Company completed the sale of an additional 516,700 shares of common stock, pursuant to the partial exercise of the option to purchase additional shares granted to the underwriter. After deducting the underwriting discount and costs associated with the capital raise, the offering resulted in net proceeds of \$57.2 million.

At December 31, 2017, the Company and the Bank were in compliance with statutory minimum capital requirements. Minimum capital requirements include a total risk-based capital ratio of 8.0%, with Tier 1 capital not less than 6.0%, common equity Tier 1 capital not less than 4.5% and a leverage ratio (Tier 1 capital to total average adjusted assets) of 4.0% based upon the regulators latest composite rating of the institution. In addition, the OCC has established higher individual minimum capital ratios for the Bank. Specifically, the Bank must maintain a Tier 1 leverage ratio of at least 8%, and a total risk-based capital ratio of at least 12%. As of December 31, 2017, the Company's leverage ratio was 12.53% compared to 10.11% at December 31, 2016. Tier 1 capital to risk weighted assets was 16.51% and 13.02% for 2017 and 2016, respectively. Total capital to risk weighted assets was 17.77% and 14.28%, respectively, for the same periods. Common equity Tier 1 capital to risk weighted assets was 12.10% and 8.81%, respectively, for the same periods. For regulatory purposes, Tier 1 Capital includes \$21.5 million of the junior subordinated debentures issued by the Company. For financial reporting purposes, these funds are included as a liability under GAAP. The Bank's leverage ratio was 9.86% and 9.32% at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

The FDIC Improvement Act of 1991 established a capital-based supervisory system for all insured depository institutions that imposes increasing restrictions on the institution as its capital deteriorates. The Bank was classified as "well capitalized" as of December 31, 2017.

As discussed under the heading Balance Sheet Analysis - Securities, \$3.4 million in unrealized losses on securities available-for-sale, less a deferred tax asset of \$713,000, was recorded as a reduction to stockholders' equity as of December 31, 2017. In addition, the effective portion of the gain or loss of our derivative instruments designated as cash flow hedges is recorded as a component of other comprehensive income. As of December 31, 2017, a \$1.1 million gain on our derivative instruments designated as cash flow hedges, less a deferred tax liability of \$227,000, was recorded as an addition to stockholders' equity. As of December 31, 2016, \$2.5 million in unrealized losses on securities available-for-sale, less a deferred tax asset of \$890,000, was recorded as an addition to stockholders' equity. As of December 31, 2016, a \$989,000 gain on our derivative instruments designated as cash flow hedges, less a deferred tax liability of \$346,000, was recorded as an addition to stockholders' equity. While the net unrealized gain or loss on securities available-for-sale and the fair value of derivative instruments designated as cash flow hedges are required to be reported as a separate component of stockholders' equity, they do not affect operating results

- 46 -

---

or regulatory capital ratios. The net unrealized gains and losses reported for December 31, 2017 and 2016, however, did affect the equity-to-assets ratio for financial reporting purposes. The ratio of equity-to-assets was 13.50% at December 31, 2017 and 11.03% at December 31, 2016.

#### Asset/Liability Management and Interest Rate Sensitivity

Interest rate sensitivity is the sensitivity of net interest income and economic value of equity to changes in market rates of interest. The primary objective of our asset and liability management process is to evaluate interest rate sensitivity inherent in our balance sheet components and establish guidelines to manage that risk within acceptable performance levels. Management and our Board of Directors are responsible for determining the appropriate level of acceptable risk based on our strategic focus, regulatory requirements for capital and liquidity, and the market environment. Our Board of Directors established an Asset/Liability management committee (“ALCO”), comprised of certain executive and senior officers of the Bank, to measure and monitor interest rate risk within defined parameters. We utilize an external model for asset and liability management from our core processor. The model captures data directly from our operating system along with additional information regarding rates and prepayment characteristics to construct an analysis that presents differences in repricing, cash flows and the maturity characteristics of earning assets and interest-bearing liabilities for selected time periods.

This data, combined with additional assumptions including repricing rates and payment characteristics, were used to perform instantaneous parallel rate shift, gradual parallel rate shift, and alternate rate shift simulations. Instantaneous parallel rate shifts are known as “rate shocks” because all rates are modeled to change instantaneously by the indicated shock amount. Gradual parallel rate shifts are called "Ramps" and reflect incremental rate increases over a 12 month period. Alternate rate shifts include floor rates that generally provide more realistic projections of changes in net interest income and market risk, although given the current low rate environment deposits costs are overstated in a down 100 basis point scenario as the model does not currently allow for negative interest rates. Results of the simulations were compared to a base case scenario that provided projected net interest income over the next 12 months with no change in the balance sheet. The estimated percentage changes in projected net interest income due to changes in interest rates of alternate down 100 basis points, ramp up 100, parallel up 200, and up 300 basis points as determined through the simulations are detailed below. At December 31, 2017, the interest rate risk model results were within policy guidelines and indicated that our balance sheet is slightly liability sensitive over a one year period. The results of the interest rate risk modeling are reviewed by ALCO and discussed quarterly at Funds Management committee meetings of our Board of Directors. The model captures data directly from our operating system along with additional information regarding rates and prepayment characteristics to construct an analysis that presents differences in repricing, cash flows and the maturity characteristics of earning assets and interest-bearing liabilities for selected time periods. As a result of an independent non-maturity deposit study commissioned in 2016, we updated our deposit beta assumptions, which are correlation assumptions between deposit rates and market rates, in rising rate scenarios on a consolidated basis from 40% to 60%. The actual deposit betas experienced in a rising rate scenario could be materially different from those assumed in the model, and therefore actual net income could be materially different from estimated net interest income indicated in the table below.

#### Net Interest Income at Risk in Year 1

| Changes in Interest Rates       | Estimated Increase / Decrease<br>in NII at December 31, 2017 |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Shock Up 300 basis points       | (1.38)%  |
| Shock Up 200 basis points       | (1.49)%  |
| Ramp Up 100 basis points        | (0.60)%  |
| Alternate Down 100 basis points | (2.95)%  |

#### Liquidity

##### Bank Liquidity

Liquidity is the availability of funds to meet maturing contractual obligations and to fund operations. The Bank's primary liquidity needs involve its ability to accommodate customers' demands for deposit withdrawals as well as customers' requests for credit. Liquidity is deemed adequate when sufficient cash to meet these needs can be promptly raised at a reasonable cost to the Bank.

Liquidity is provided primarily by three sources: a stable base of funding sources, an adequate level of assets that can be readily converted into cash, and borrowing lines with correspondent banks. Our core deposits are our most stable and important source of funding. Cash deposits at other banks, federal funds sold, and principal payments received on loans and mortgage-backed

- 47 -

---

securities provide additional primary sources of liquidity. Approximately \$66.2 million in projected cash flows from securities repayments during 2018 provides an additional source of liquidity.

The Bank also has significant borrowing capacity with the FRB-Atlanta and with the FHLB-Dallas. As of December 31, 2017, we had no borrowings with the FRB-Atlanta. Long-term FHLB-Dallas advances totaled \$10.0 million at December 31, 2017 and consisted of a fixed rate advance that matures in January 2019 and bears a fixed interest rate of 1.985%. Short-term FHLB advances at December 31, 2017 totaled \$40.0 million and consisted of two FHLB advances with a maturity of 1 month at a fixed interest rate of 1.59%. The Bank has the ability to post additional collateral of approximately \$210.6 million if necessary to meet liquidity needs. Additionally, \$171.1 million in loan collateral is pledged under a Borrower-in-Custody line with the FRB-Atlanta. Under existing agreements with the FHLB-Dallas, our borrowing capacity totaled \$237.8 million at December 31, 2017. Additional unsecured borrowing lines totaling \$33.5 million are available through correspondent banks. We utilize these contingency funding alternatives to meet deposit volatility, which is more likely in the current environment, given unusual competitive offerings within our markets.

#### Company Liquidity

In connection with the SBLF transaction, the Company issued \$32.0 million in Series B Preferred Stock to the Treasury. The dividend rate was set at 1.00% for the fourth quarter of 2013 due to attaining the target 10% growth rate in qualified small business loans during the second quarter of 2013. As a result of qualified small business loan growth as of September 30, 2013, the dividend rate was set at 1.00% for the period from January 1, 2014 through February 25, 2016. On February 25, 2016, the dividend rate increased to 9% per annum.

On June 13, 2017, the Company completed the sale of 4,583,334 shares of its common stock pursuant to an underwritten public offering, and on July 11, 2017, the Company completed the sale of an additional 516,700 shares of common stock, pursuant to the partial exercise of the option to purchase additional shares granted to the underwriter. After deducting the underwriting discount and costs associated with the capital raise, the offering resulted in net proceeds of \$57.2 million. The Company, subject to regulatory approval, intends to use \$32.0 million of the net proceeds to redeem all of the outstanding Series B Preferred Stock issued to the U.S. Treasury as a result of its participation in the SBLF. The Company intends to use the remaining portion of the net proceeds to enhance its capital structure, to fund future organic growth, for working capital, and other general corporate purposes.

At the Company level, cash is needed primarily to meet interest payments on the junior subordinated debentures, dividend payments on the Series B and Series C Preferred Stock and dividends on the common stock. We issued \$8,248,000 in unsecured junior subordinated debentures in September 2004 and \$7,217,000 in February 2001. In August 2014, we paid off the \$7.2 million junior subordinated debenture. In December 2012, we acquired \$13.9 million in unsecured junior subordinated debentures from PSB Financial Corporation. The terms of the junior subordinated debentures are described in the notes to the consolidated financial statements. Dividends from the Bank totaling \$4,000,000 provided additional liquidity prior to the capital raise for the Company to meet interest and dividend payments. Dividends totaling \$9,000,000 were paid by the Bank to the Company in 2016. Due to the loss reported for the year ended December 31, 2017, we currently do not have the ability to approve dividends from the Bank to the Company without prior approval from the OCC. At December 31, 2017, the parent company had approximately \$50.2 million cash available for general corporate purposes, including injecting capital into the Bank. As a publicly traded company, the Company also has the ability, subject to market conditions, to issue additional shares of common stock, preferred stock and other securities to provide funds as needed for operations and future growth of the Company and the Bank.

#### Dividends

The primary source of cash dividends on the Company's common stock is dividends from the Bank. Due to the loss reported for the year ended December 31, 2017, we currently do not have the ability to pay dividends from the Bank

to the Company without prior approval from the OCC. For additional information regarding restrictions on our ability to pay dividends see Part II, Item 5 under the heading “Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Shareholder Matters, and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities.”

Cash dividends totaling \$3.7 million and \$4.1 million were declared to common stockholders during 2017 and 2016, respectively. Dividends declared on our Series B preferred stock totaled \$2.8 million and \$2.5 million during 2017 and 2016, respectively. Dividends declared on our Series C preferred stock totaled \$362,000 and \$365,000 during 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Off Balance Sheet Arrangements and Other Contractual Obligations

- 48 -

---

In the normal course of business we use various financial instruments with off-balance sheet risk to meet the financing needs of customers and to reduce exposure to fluctuations in interest rates. These financial instruments include commitments to extend credit and letters of credit. Those instruments involve, to varying degrees, elements of credit and interest rate risk in excess of the amounts recognized in the financial statements. We did not have an average balance in any category of short-term borrowings detailed below in 2017, 2016, or 2015 that exceeded 30% of our stockholders' equity for such year. Additional information regarding contractual obligations appears in the notes to the consolidated financial statements. The following table presents significant contractual obligations as of December 31, 2017.

Table 16  
Contractual Obligations  
December 31, 2017  
(in thousands)

|                              | Payment due by period |                   |                |                |                         |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|----------------|----------------|-------------------------|
|                              | Total                 | 1 year<br>or less | > 1-3<br>years | > 3-5<br>years | More<br>than<br>5 years |
| Time deposits                | \$182,281             | \$97,604          | \$72,983       | \$11,692       | \$2                     |
| Short-term FHLB advances     | 40,000                | 40,000            | —              | —              | —                       |
| Long-term debt obligations   | 32,188                | —                 | 10,021         | —              | 22,167                  |
| Retail repurchase agreements | 67,133                | 67,133            | —              | —              | —                       |
| Operating lease obligations  | 12,815                | 1,814             | 3,636          | 1,908          | 5,457                   |
| Total                        | \$334,417             | \$206,551         | \$86,640       | \$13,600       | \$27,626                |

#### Impact of Inflation and Changing Prices

The consolidated financial statements and notes thereto, presented herein, have been prepared in accordance with GAAP, which generally require the measurement of financial position and operating results in terms of historical dollars without considering the change in the relative purchasing power of money over time and due to inflation. The impact of inflation is reflected in the increased cost of operations. Unlike most industrial companies, nearly all of our assets and liabilities are financial in nature. As a result, interest rates generally have a greater impact on our performance than do the effects of general levels of inflation. For additional information, see "Funding Sources – Asset Liability Management and Interest Rate Sensitivity."

#### Non-GAAP Financial Measures

Certain financial information included in the Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations is determined by methods other than in accordance with GAAP. Table 17 below presents a reconciliation of these non-GAAP financial measures to the most comparable GAAP financial measures. These non-GAAP financial measures include "core net interest income", "core net interest margin", "diluted earnings per share, operating" and "operating earnings available to common shareholders". "Core net interest income" is defined as net interest income excluding net purchase accounting adjustments. "Core net interest margin" is defined as core net interest income expressed as a percentage of average earnings assets. "Diluted earnings per share, operating" is defined as net earnings available to common shareholders adjusted for specified one-time items divided by diluted weighted-average shares. "Operating earnings available to common shareholders" is defined as net income available to common shareholders less tax-effected nonoperating income and expense items, including securities gains/losses.

We use non-GAAP measures because we believe they are useful for evaluating our financial condition and performance over periods of time, as well as in managing and evaluating our business and in discussions about our performance. We also believe these non-GAAP financial measures provide users of our financial information with a meaningful measure for assessing our financial condition as well as comparison to financial results for prior periods.



These results should not be viewed as a substitute for results determined in accordance with GAAP, and are not necessarily comparable to non-GAAP performance measures that other companies may use.

- 49 -

---

Table 17  
Reconciliation of Non-GAAP Financial Measures  
(in thousands except per share data)

|   | Year Ended December 31, |             |             |   |
|---|-------------------------|-------------|-------------|---|
|   | 2017                    | 2016        | 2015        |   |
| <b>Core Net Interest Margin</b>   |                         |             |             |   |
| Net interest income (FTE)   | \$75,382                | \$73,264    | \$76,311    |   |
| Less purchase accounting adjustments  | (1,393 )                | (1,857 )    | (2,342 )    |   |
| Core net interest income, net of purchase accounting adjustments                        | A \$73,989              | \$71,407    | \$73,969    |   |
| Total average earning assets  | \$1,772,103             | \$1,770,796 | \$1,783,824 |   |
| Add average balance of loan valuation discount  | 1,605                   | 2,799       | 4,507       |   |
| Average earnings assets, excluding loan valuation discount                              | B \$1,773,708           | \$1,773,595 | \$1,788,331 |   |
| Core net interest margin  | A/B 4.17                | % 4.03      | % 4.14      | % |
| <b>Diluted (Loss) Earnings Per Share, Operating</b>                                     |                         |             |             |   |
| Diluted (loss) earnings per share   | \$(1.06 )               | \$0.58      | \$0.90      |   |
| Effect of net gain on sales of securities   | (0.01 )                 | —           | (0.07 )     |   |
| Effect of income from death benefit on bank owned life insurance                        | —                       | —           | (0.01 )     |   |
| Effect of gain on sale of branches  | (0.04 )                 | —           | —           |   |
| Effect of severance and retention accruals  | 0.07                    | —           | —           |   |
| Effect of one-time charge related to discontinued branch projects                       | 0.02                    | —           | —           |   |
| Effect of one-time charge related to closure of branches                                | 0.04                    | —           | —           |   |
| Effect of write-down of assets held for sale  | 0.06                    | —           | —           |   |
| Effect of loss on transfer of loans to held for sale                                    | 0.28                    | —           | —           |   |
| Effect of regulatory remediation costs  | 0.12                    | —           | —           |   |
| Effect of write-down of net deferred tax asset resulting from the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act | 0.25                    | —           | —           |   |
| Diluted (loss) earnings per share, operating  | \$(0.27 )               | \$0.58      | \$0.82      |   |
| <b>Operating (Loss) Earnings Available to Common Shareholders</b>                       |                         |             |             |   |
| Net (loss) earnings available to common shareholders                                    | \$(15,003 )             | \$6,578     | \$10,330    |   |
| Effect of net gain on sales of securities, after-tax                                    | (226 )                  | (13 )       | (808 )      |   |
| Effect of income from death benefit on bank owned life insurance                        | —                       | —           | (160 )      |   |
| Effect of gain on sale of branches, after-tax   | (484 )                  | —           | —           |   |
| Effect of severance and retention accruals, after-tax                                   | 983                     | —           | —           |   |
| Effect of one-time charge related to discontinued branch projects, after-tax            | 302                     | —           | —           |   |
| Effect of one-time charge related to closure of branches, after-tax                     | 587                     | —           | —           |   |
| Effect of write-down of assets held for sale, after-tax                                 | 883                     | —           | —           |   |
| Effect of loss on transfer of loans to held for sale, after-tax                         | 3,920                   | —           | —           |   |
| Effect of regulatory remediation costs, after-tax                                       | 1,708                   | —           | —           |   |
| Effect of write-down of net deferred tax asset resulting from the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act | 3,595                   | —           | —           |   |
| Operating (loss) earnings available to common shareholders                              | \$(3,735 )              | \$6,565     | \$9,362     |   |



|   | Year Ended          |      |
|---|---------------------|------|
|   | December 31,        |      |
|   | 2017                | 2016 |
| Operating Return on Average Assets            |                     |      |
| Return on average assets                      | <del>0%</del> 7%34  | 0%53 |
| Effect of non-operating revenues and expenses | <del>0%</del> 9—%   | 0%05 |
| Operating return on average assets            | <del>0%</del> 19%34 | 0%48 |

Operating Return on Average Equity

|   |                     |      |
|---|---------------------|------|
| Return on average equity                      | <del>0%</del> 32%73 | 0%60 |
| Effect of non-operating revenues and expenses | <del>5%</del> 0—%   | 0%56 |
| Operating return on average equity            | <del>0%</del> 82%73 | 5%44 |

Item 7A – Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk

Information regarding market risk appears under the heading “Funding Sources – Asset Liability Management and Interest Rate Sensitivity” under Item 7 – Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Position and Results of Operations included in this filing.

## Item 8 – Financial Statements and Supplementary Data

## Consolidated Balance Sheets

December 31, 2017 and 2016

(dollars in thousands, except share data)

|  | 2017               | 2016               |
|--|--------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Assets</b>  |                    |                    |
| Cash and due from banks, including required reserves of \$6,741 and \$6,669, respectively  | \$34,775           | \$31,687           |
| Interest-bearing deposits in banks   | 114,839            | 47,091             |
| Federal funds sold   | 3,350              | 3,450              |
| Securities available-for-sale, at fair value (cost of \$312,584 and \$344,416 at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively)                                     | 309,191            | 341,873            |
| Securities held-to-maturity (estimated fair value of \$80,920 and \$98,261 at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively)  | 81,052             | 98,211             |
| Other investments  | 12,214             | 11,355             |
| Loans held for sale  | 15,737             | —                  |
| Loans  | 1,183,426          | 1,284,082          |
| Allowance for loan losses  | (26,888 )          | (24,372 )          |
| Loans, net   | 1,156,538          | 1,259,710          |
| Bank premises and equipment, net   | 59,057             | 68,954             |
| Accrued interest receivable  | 8,283              | 7,576              |
| Goodwill   | 42,171             | 42,171             |
| Intangibles  | 3,515              | 4,621              |
| Cash surrender value of life insurance   | 14,896             | 14,335             |
| Other real estate  | 2,001              | 2,175              |
| Assets held for sale   | 3,572              | —                  |
| Other assets   | 19,961             | 10,131             |
| <b>Total assets</b>  | <b>\$1,881,152</b> | <b>\$1,943,340</b> |
| <b>Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity</b>  |                    |                    |
| <b>Liabilities:</b>  |                    |                    |
| <b>Deposits:</b>   |                    |                    |
| Noninterest-bearing  | \$416,547          | \$414,921          |
| Interest-bearing   | 1,063,142          | 1,164,509          |
| <b>Total deposits</b>  | <b>1,479,689</b>   | <b>1,579,430</b>   |
| Securities sold under agreements to repurchase   | 67,133             | 94,461             |
| Short-term Federal Home Loan Bank advances   | 40,000             | —                  |
| Long-term Federal Home Loan Bank advances  | 10,021             | 25,424             |
| Junior subordinated debentures   | 22,167             | 22,167             |
| Other liabilities  | 8,127              | 7,482              |
| <b>Total liabilities</b>   | <b>1,627,137</b>   | <b>1,728,964</b>   |
| <b>Commitments and contingencies</b>   |                    |                    |
| <b>Stockholders' equity:</b>   |                    |                    |
| Series B Preferred stock, no par value; 5,000,000 shares authorized, 32,000 shares issued and outstanding at December 31, 2017 and 2016                        | 32,000             | 32,000             |
| Series C Preferred stock, no par value; 100,000 shares authorized, 89,875 and 91,098 shares issued and outstanding at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively | 8,987              | 9,110              |
|  | 1,655              | 1,136              |

Edgar Filing: MIDSOUTH BANCORP INC - Form 10-K

Common stock, \$0.10 par value; 30,000,000 shares authorized, 16,548,829 and 11,362,716 shares issued and outstanding at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively

|  |             |             |   |
|--|-------------|-------------|---|
| Additional paid-in capital                 | 168,412     | 111,166     |   |
| Unearned ESOP shares                       | (937        | ) (1,233    | ) |
| Accumulated other comprehensive loss       | (1,828      | ) (1,010    | ) |
| Retained earnings                          | 45,726      | 63,207      |   |
| Total stockholders' equity                 | 254,015     | 214,376     |   |
| Total liabilities and stockholders' equity | \$1,881,152 | \$1,943,340 |   |

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

- 52 -

---

Consolidated Statements of Operations  
 Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015  
 (in thousands, except per share data)

|  | 2017       | 2016     | 2015     |
|--|------------|----------|----------|
| Interest income:                                     |            |          |          |
| Loans, including fees                                | \$68,708   | \$67,584 | \$70,474 |
| Investment securities:                               |            |          |          |
| Taxable  | 9,180      | 7,924    | 7,559    |
| Nontaxable   | 1,498      | 1,756    | 2,188    |
| Other interest income                                | 1,237      | 766      | 517      |
| Total interest income                                | 80,623     | 78,030   | 80,738   |
| Interest expense:                                    |            |          |          |
| Deposits   | 4,099      | 3,654    | 3,587    |
| Short-term borrowings                                | 762        | 966      | 1,017    |
| Long-term borrowings                                 | 335        | 366      | 364      |
| Junior subordinated debentures                       | 830        | 704      | 613      |
| Total interest expense                               | 6,026      | 5,690    | 5,581    |
| Net interest income                                  | 74,597     | 72,340   | 75,157   |
| Provision for loan losses                            | 30,200     | 10,600   | 13,900   |
| Net interest income after provision for loan losses  | 44,397     | 61,740   | 61,257   |
| Noninterest income:                                  |            |          |          |
| Service charges on deposit accounts                  | 9,724      | 9,883    | 9,754    |
| ATM and debit card income                            | 6,912      | 6,579    | 6,463    |
| Gain on securities, net                              | 347        | 20       | 1,243    |
| Gain on sale of branches                             | 744        | —        | —        |
| Other charges and fees                               | 4,054      | 3,624    | 4,020    |
| Total noninterest income                             | 21,781     | 20,106   | 21,480   |
| Noninterest expenses:                                |            |          |          |
| Salaries and employee benefits                       | 33,889     | 32,932   | 32,036   |
| Occupancy expense                                    | 15,670     | 14,630   | 15,052   |
| ATM and debit card expense                           | 2,721      | 3,239    | 2,951    |
| Loss on transfer of loans to held for sale           | 6,030      | —        | —        |
| Other  | 22,227     | 17,749   | 17,098   |
| Total noninterest expense                            | 80,537     | 68,550   | 67,137   |
| (Loss) income before income taxes                    | (14,359 )  | 13,296   | 15,600   |
| Income tax (benefit) expense                         | (2,598 )   | 3,857    | 4,583    |
| Net (loss) earnings                                  | (11,761 )  | 9,439    | 11,017   |
| Dividends on preferred stock                         | 3,242      | 2,861    | 687      |
| Net (loss) earnings available to common stockholders | \$(15,003) | \$6,578  | \$10,330 |
| (Loss) earnings per common share:                    |            |          |          |
| Basic  | \$(1.06 )  | \$0.58   | \$0.91   |
| Diluted  | \$(1.06 )  | \$0.58   | \$0.90   |

See notes to consolidated financial statements.





Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive (Loss) Income  
 Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015  
 (in thousands)

|   | 2017       | 2016     | 2015     |
|---|------------|----------|----------|
| Net (loss) earnings   | \$(11,761) | \$9,439  | \$11,017 |
| Other comprehensive loss, net of tax:   |            |          |          |
| Unrealized losses on securities available-for-sale:                                       |            |          |          |
| Unrealized holding losses arising during the year   | (503 )     | (3,307 ) | (2,369 ) |
| Less: reclassification adjustment for net gains on sales of securities available-for-sale | (347 )     | (20 )    | (1,243 ) |
| Net change in unrealized losses on securities available-for-sale                          | (850 )     | (3,327 ) | (3,612 ) |
| Unrealized gain on derivative instruments designated as cash flow hedges:                 |            |          |          |
| Unrealized holdings gains on derivatives arising during the period                        | 106        | 989      | —        |
| Less: reclassification adjustment for gains on derivative instruments                     | (17 )      | —        | —        |
| Net change in unrealized gain on derivative instruments                                   | 89         | 989      | —        |
| Total other comprehensive loss, before tax  | (761 )     | (2,338 ) | (3,612 ) |
| Income tax effect related to items of other comprehensive loss                            | 267        | 819      | 1,264    |
| Total other comprehensive loss, net of tax  | (494 )     | (1,519 ) | (2,348 ) |
| Total comprehensive (loss) income   | \$(12,255) | \$7,920  | \$8,669  |

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity  
 Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015  
 (in thousands, except share and per share data)

|   | Preferred Stock |          | Common Stock |         | Surplus   | Unearned<br>ESOP<br>Shares | Accumulated                      |                   | Retained<br>Earnings | Total     |
|---|-----------------|----------|--------------|---------|-----------|----------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|-----------|
|   | Shares          | Amount   | Shares       | Amount  |           |                            | Other<br>Comprehensive<br>Income | Treasury<br>Stock |                      |           |
| Balance<br>December 31,<br>2014   | 125,680         | \$41,368 | 11,491,703   | \$1,149 | \$112,744 | \$(250)                    | \$2,857                          | \$(3,295)         | \$54,439             | \$209,012 |
| Net earnings  | —               | —        | —            | —       | —         | —                          | —                                | —                 | 11,017               | 11,017    |
| Dividends on<br>Series B<br>preferred stock   | —               | —        | —            | —       | —         | —                          | —                                | —                 | (320 )               | (320 )    |
| Dividends on<br>Series C<br>preferred stock   | —               | —        | —            | —       | —         | —                          | —                                | —                 | (367 )               | (367 )    |
| Dividends on<br>common stock<br>- \$0.36 per<br>share   | —               | —        | —            | —       | —         | —                          | —                                | —                 | (4,075 )             | (4,075 )  |
| Conversion of<br>Series C<br>preferred stock<br>to common<br>stock                                  | (2,480 )        | (248 )   | 13,759       | 1       | 247       | —                          | —                                | —                 | —                    | —         |
| Reclassification<br>of treasury<br>stock per the<br>LCBA  | —               | —        | (150,967 )   | (15 )   | (3,280 )  | —                          | —                                | 3,295             | —                    | —         |
| Exercise of<br>stock options  | —               | —        | 7,655        | 1       | 98        | —                          | —                                | —                 | —                    | 99        |
| Tax benefit<br>resulting from<br>distribution<br>from Directors<br>Deferred<br>Compensation<br>Plan | —               | —        | —            | —       | 420       | —                          | —                                | —                 | —                    | 420       |
| Tax benefit for<br>dividends paid<br>to the ESOP  | —               | —        | —            | —       | 187       | —                          | —                                | —                 | —                    | 187       |
| Increase in<br>ESOP<br>obligation, net<br>of repayments   | —               | —        | —            | —       | —         | (843 )                     | —                                | —                 | —                    | (843 )    |

Edgar Filing: MIDSOUTH BANCORP INC - Form 10-K

|  |         |        |            |       |         |         |          |   |          |          |
|--|---------|--------|------------|-------|---------|---------|----------|---|----------|----------|
| Stock option and restricted stock compensation expense | —       | —      | —          | —     | 355     | —       | —        | — | —        | 355      |
| Change in accumulated other comprehensive income/loss  | —       | —      | —          | —     | —       | —       | (2,348 ) | — | —        | (2,348 ) |
| Balance  |         |        |            |       |         |         |          |   |          |          |
| December 31, 2015                                      | 123,200 | 41,120 | 11,362,150 | 1,136 | 110,771 | (1,093) | 509      | — | 60,694   | 213,137  |
| Net earnings   | —       | —      | —          | —     | —       | —       | —        | — | 9,439    | 9,439    |
| Dividends on Series B preferred stock                  | —       | —      | —          | —     | —       | —       | —        | — | (2,496 ) | (2,496 ) |
| Dividends on Series C preferred stock                  | —       | —      | —          | —     | —       | —       | —        | — | (365 )   | (365 )   |
| Dividends on common stock - \$0.36 per share           | —       | —      | —          | —     | —       | —       | —        | — | (4,065 ) | (4,065 ) |
| Conversion of Series C preferred stock to common stock | (102 )  | (10 )  | 566        | —     | 10      | —       | —        | — | —        | —        |
| Tax benefit resulting from distribution from Directors | —       | —      | —          | —     | 127     | —       | —        | — | —        | 127      |
| Deferred Compensation Plan                             |         |        |            |       |         |         |          |   |          |          |
| Tax benefit for dividends paid to the ESOP             | —       | —      | —          | —     | 154     | —       | —        | — | —        | 154      |
| Increase in ESOP obligation, net of repayments         | —       | —      | —          | —     | —       | (140 )  | —        | — | —        | (140 )   |
| Stock option and restricted stock compensation expense | —       | —      | —          | —     | 210     | —       | —        | — | —        | 210      |
| ESOP compensation expense                              | —       | —      | —          | —     | (106 )  | —       | —        | — | —        | (106 )   |

Edgar Filing: MIDSOUTH BANCORP INC - Form 10-K

|  |          |        |            |       |         |         |          |   |           |           |
|--|----------|--------|------------|-------|---------|---------|----------|---|-----------|-----------|
| Change in accumulated other comprehensive income/loss        | —        | —      | —          | —     | —       | —       | (1,519 ) | — | —         | (1,519 )  |
| Balance  |          |        |            |       |         |         |          |   |           |           |
| December 31, 2016  | 123,098  | 41,110 | 11,362,716 | 1,136 | 111,166 | (1,233) | (1,010 ) | — | 63,207    | 214,376   |
| Net loss   | —        | —      | —          | —     | —       | —       | —        | — | (11,761 ) | (11,761 ) |
| Dividends on Series B preferred stock                        | —        | —      | —          | —     | —       | —       | —        | — | (2,880 )  | (2,880 )  |
| Dividends on Series C preferred stock                        | —        | —      | —          | —     | —       | —       | —        | — | (362 )    | (362 )    |
| Dividends on common stock - \$0.20 per share                 | —        | —      | —          | —     | —       | —       | —        | — | (2,802 )  | (2,802 )  |
| Conversion of Series C preferred stock to common stock       | (1,223 ) | (123 ) | 6,791      | 1     | 122     | —       | —        | — | —         | —         |
| Issuance of common stock, net of offering expenses of \$683  | —        | —      | 5,100,034  | 510   | 56,641  | —       | —        | — | —         | 57,151    |
| Restricted stock grant                                       | —        | —      | 58,090     | 6     | (6 )    | —       | —        | — | —         | —         |
| Vested restricted stock                                      | —        | —      | 700        | —     | —       | —       | —        | — | —         | —         |
| Exercise of stock options                                    | —        | —      | 20,498     | 2     | 264     | —       | —        | — | —         | 266       |
| ESOP shares released for allocation                          | —        | —      | —          | —     | —       | 296     | —        | — | —         | 296       |
| Stock option and restricted stock compensation expense       | —        | —      | —          | —     | 163     | —       | —        | — | —         | 163       |
| ESOP compensation expense                                    | —        | —      | —          | —     | 62      | —       | —        | — | —         | 62        |
| Tax Cuts and Jobs Act of 2017, reclassification from AOCI to | —        | —      | —          | —     | —       | —       | (324 )   | — | 324       | —         |

|   |         |          |            |         |           |         |           |     |          |           |
|---|---------|----------|------------|---------|-----------|---------|-----------|-----|----------|-----------|
| retained earnings                                     |         |          |            |         |           |         |           |     |          |           |
| Change in accumulated other comprehensive income/loss | —       | —        | —          | —       | —         | —       | (494 )    | —   | —        | (494 )    |
| Balance   |         |          |            |         |           |         |           |     |          |           |
| December 31, 2017                                     | 121,875 | \$40,987 | 16,548,829 | \$1,655 | \$168,412 | \$(937) | \$(1,828) | \$— | \$45,726 | \$254,015 |

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

- 55 -

---

Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows  
Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015  
(in thousands)

|  | 2017        | 2016      | 2015      |
|--|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| Cash flows from operating activities:  |             |           |           |
| Net (loss) earnings  | \$(11,761 ) | \$9,439   | \$11,017  |
| Adjustments to reconcile net (loss) earnings to net cash provided by operating activities: |             |           |           |
| Depreciation   | 5,660       | 5,920     | 6,168     |
| Accretion of purchase accounting adjustments   | (287 )      | (750 )    | (1,235 )  |
| Provision for loan losses  | 30,200      | 10,600    | 13,900    |
| Deferred tax benefit   | (879 )      | (1,582 )  | (1,785 )  |
| Amortization of premiums on securities, net  | 2,826       | 2,963     | 2,815     |
| Accretion of other investments   | —           | —         | (1 )      |
| Net (gain) loss on sale of other real estate   | (18 )       | 57        | 1         |
| Net write down of other real estate owned  | 422         | 130       | 111       |
| Net loss (gain) on sale/disposal of premises and equipment                                 | 550         | (35 )     | (24 )     |
| Write down of assets held for sale   | 1,359       | —         | —         |
| Loss on transfer of loans to held for sale   | 6,030       | —         | —         |
| Income recognized from death benefit on bank owned life insurance                          | —           | —         | (160 )    |
| Stock-based compensation expense   | 163         | 210       | 355       |
| Net excess tax benefit from stock-based compensation                                       | 397         | 281       | 607       |
| ESOP compensation expense  | 62          | (106 )    | —         |
| Net gain on sale of investment securities  | (347 )      | (20 )     | (1,243 )  |
| Change in accrued interest receivable  | (707 )      | (982 )    | 41        |
| Change in accrued interest payable   | (31 )       | (9 )      | (114 )    |
| Change in other assets and liabilities, net  | (7,538 )    | 1,008     | (661 )    |
| Net cash provided by operating activities  | 26,101      | 27,124    | 29,792    |
| Cash flows from investing activities:  |             |           |           |
| Proceeds from maturities and calls of securities available-for-sale                        | 56,452      | 68,696    | 70,934    |
| Proceeds from maturities and calls of securities held-to-maturity                          | 15,417      | 17,589    | 23,288    |
| Proceeds from sale of securities available-for-sale  | 16,979      | 6,803     | 40,277    |
| Proceeds from sale of security held-to-maturity  | 887         | —         | —         |
| Purchases of securities available-for-sale   | (43,223 )   | (104,491) | (156,449) |
| Proceeds from redemption of other investments  | 57          | 600       | 2,180     |
| Purchases of other investments   | (916 )      | (767 )    | (3,377 )  |
| Proceeds from bank owned life insurance death benefit                                      | —           | —         | 498       |
| Net change in loans  | 50,544      | (25,698 ) | 14,480    |
| Purchases of premises and equipment  | (3,756 )    | (5,823 )  | (5,374 )  |
| Proceeds from sale of premises and equipment   | 2,075       | 89        | 83        |
| Proceeds from sale of other real estate owned  | 1,763       | 3,170     | 1,514     |
| Purchase of other real estate owned  | —           | —         | (351 )    |
| Net cash provided by (used in) investing activities  | 96,279      | (39,832 ) | (12,297 ) |
| Cash flows from financing activities:  |             |           |           |
| Change in deposits   | (99,741 )   | 28,615    | (34,285 ) |
| Change in securities sold under agreements to repurchase                                   | (27,328 )   | 8,504     | 23,859    |
| Borrowings on Federal Home Loan Bank advances  | 90,000      | 25,000    | 150,000   |
| Repayments of Federal Home Loan Bank advances  | (65,046 )   | (50,068 ) | (150,064) |
| Proceeds from exercise of stock options  | 266         | —         | 99        |

Edgar Filing: MIDSOUTH BANCORP INC - Form 10-K

|  |           |          |            |
|--|-----------|----------|------------|
| Proceeds from issuance of common stock               | 57,834    | —        | —          |
| Stock offering expenses                              | (683      | ) —      | —          |
| Payment of dividends on preferred stock              | (3,242    | ) (2,221 | ) (689 )   |
| Payment of dividends on common stock                 | (3,704    | ) (4,095 | ) (4,086 ) |
| Net cash (used in) provided by financing activities  | (51,644   | ) 5,735  | (15,166 )  |
| Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents | 70,736    | (6,973   | ) 2,329    |
| Cash and cash equivalents, beginning of year         | 82,228    | 89,201   | 86,872     |
| Cash and cash equivalents, end of year               | \$152,964 | \$82,228 | \$89,201   |
| See notes to consolidated financial statements.      |           |          |            |

- 56 -

---

Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows (continued)  
 Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015  
 (in thousands)

|  | 2017    | 2016     | 2015     |
|--|---------|----------|----------|
| Supplemental cash flow information:  |         |          |          |
| Interest paid  | \$6,057 | \$5,700  | \$5,695  |
| Income taxes paid  | 2,500   | 4,473    | 6,641    |
| Noncash investing and financing activities:                                    |         |          |          |
| Change in accrued common stock dividends                                       | (858 )  | —        | (10 )    |
| Change in accrued preferred stock dividends                                    | (1 )    | 640      | (3 )     |
| Net change in loan to ESOP   | 296     | (140 )   | (843 )   |
| Change in unrealized gains/losses on securities available-for-sale, net of tax | (552 )  | (2,162 ) | (2,348 ) |
| Change in unrealized gains on derivative instruments, net of tax               | 58      | 642      | —        |
| Transfer of loans to other real estate   | 1,993   | 1,345    | 1,228    |
| Transfer of loans to held for sale   | 15,737  | —        | —        |

See notes to consolidated financial statements.



Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015

1. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

**Basis of Presentation**—The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of MidSouth Bancorp, Inc. (the “Company”) and its wholly owned subsidiary MidSouth Bank, N.A. (the “Bank”). All significant intercompany accounts and transactions have been eliminated in consolidation. We are subject to regulation under the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956. The Bank is primarily regulated by the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency (“OCC”) and the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (“FDIC”).

We are a bank holding company headquartered in Lafayette, Louisiana operating principally in the community banking business by providing banking services to commercial and retail customers through the Bank. The Bank is community oriented and focuses primarily on offering competitive commercial and consumer loan and deposit services to individuals and small to middle market businesses in Louisiana and central and east Texas.

The accounting principles we follow and the methods of applying these principles conform with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (“GAAP”) and with general practices within the banking industry. In preparing the financial statements in conformity with GAAP, management is required to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts in the financial statements. Actual results could differ significantly from those estimates. Material estimates common to the banking industry that are particularly susceptible to significant change in the near term include, but are not limited to, the determination of the allowance for loan losses, the valuation of real estate acquired in connection with or in lieu of foreclosure on loans, the assessment of goodwill for impairment, and valuation allowances associated with the realization of deferred tax assets which are based on future taxable income. Given the current instability of the economic environment, it is reasonably possible that the methodology of the assessment of potential loan losses, losses on other real estate owned, goodwill impairment, and other fair value measurements could change in the near term or could result in impairment going forward.

A summary of significant accounting policies follows:

**Cash and cash equivalents**—Cash and cash equivalents include cash on hand, amounts due from banks, interest-bearing deposits in other banks with original maturities of less than 90 days, and federal funds sold.

**Investment Securities**—We determine the appropriate classification of debt securities at the time of purchase and reassesses this classification periodically. Trading account securities are held for resale in anticipation of short-term market movements. Debt securities are classified as held-to-maturity when we have the positive intent and ability to hold the securities to maturity. Securities not classified as held-to-maturity or trading are classified as available-for-sale. We had no trading account securities during the three years ended December 31, 2017.

Held-to-maturity securities are stated at amortized cost. Available-for-sale securities are stated at fair value, with unrealized gains and losses, net of deferred taxes, reported as a separate component of stockholders’ equity.

The amortized cost of debt securities classified as held-to-maturity or available-for-sale is adjusted for amortization of premiums and accretion of discounts to maturity or, in the case of mortgage-backed securities, over the estimated life of the security. Amortization, accretion, and accrued interest are included in interest income on securities. Realized gains and losses on the sale of investment securities are included in earnings and are determined using the specific-identification method.

Management evaluates investment securities for other than temporary impairment on a quarterly basis. A decline in the fair value of available-for-sale and held-to-maturity securities below cost that is deemed other than temporary is charged to earnings for a decline in value deemed to be credit related and a new cost basis for the security is established. The decline in value attributed to non-credit related factors is recognized in other comprehensive income.

Other Investments—Other investments include Federal Reserve Bank and Federal Home Loan Bank stock, as well as other correspondent bank stocks and our CRA investment, which have no readily determined market value and are carried at cost. Due to the redemption provisions of the investments, the fair value equals cost and no impairment exists.

Loans Held For Sale—Loans are classified as held for sale when management has positively determined that the loans will be sold in the foreseeable future and the Company has the ability to do so. The classification may be made upon origination or

- 58 -

---

subsequent to the origination or purchase. Once a decision has been made to sell loans not previously classified as held for sale, such loans are transferred into the held for sale classification and carried at the lower of cost or estimated fair value. Fair value is based on commitments from investors or prevailing market prices. Gains and losses on sales are recorded in noninterest income or expense.

**Loans**—Loans that we have the intent and ability to hold for the foreseeable future or until maturity are reported at the principal amount outstanding, net of the allowance for loan losses and any deferred fees or costs on originated loans. Interest income on commercial and real estate mortgage loans is calculated by using the simple interest method on the daily balance of the principal amount outstanding. Unearned income on installment loans is credited to operations based on a method which approximates the interest method. The special assets and the collections departments are responsible for validating loans past due for reporting purposes. Once loans are determined to be past due, both departments actively works with customers to bring loans back to current status.

We consider a loan to be impaired when, based upon current information and events, we believe it is probable that we will be unable to collect all amounts due according to the contractual terms of the loan agreement. All loans above a specific threshold classified as special mention, substandard, or doubtful, based on credit risk rating factors, are reviewed for potential impairment. Our impaired loans include troubled debt restructurings and performing and nonperforming major loans in which full payment of principal or interest is not expected. All TDRs, regardless of the outstanding balance, are reviewed for potential impairment. We calculate the allowance required for impaired loans based on the present value of expected future cash flows discounted at the loan's effective interest rate, or at the loan's observable market price or the fair value of the collateral if the loan is collateral dependent. A loan may be impaired but not on nonaccrual status when available information suggests that it is probable the Bank may not receive all contractual principal and interest, however, the loan is still current and payments are received in accordance with the terms of the loan. Payments received for impaired loans not on nonaccrual status are applied to principal and interest.

All impaired loans are reviewed, at minimum, on a quarterly basis. Reviews may be performed more frequently if material information is available before the next scheduled quarterly review. Existing valuations are reviewed to determine if additional discounts or new appraisals are required. After this review, when comparing the resulting collateral valuation to the outstanding loan balance, if the discounted collateral value exceeds the loan balance no specific allocation is reserved. All loans included in our impairment analysis are subject to the same procedure and review, with no distinction given to the dollar amount of the loan.

Our Credit Risk Committee meets monthly to review loans with adverse classifications. Loans greater than or equal to \$1,000,000 with adverse classifications are reviewed monthly; loans between \$250,000 and \$1,000,000 with adverse classifications are reviewed quarterly. Loan officers, loan review officers, and special assets officers contribute updated information on each credit, reviewing potential declines or improvements in the borrower's repayment ability and our collateral position. If deterioration in our collateral position is determined, additional discounts may be applied to the impairment analysis before the new appraisal is received. The committee makes a determination of whether the loans reviewed have reached a point of collateral dependency and sufficient doubt exists as to collectibility. As a matter of policy, loans are placed on nonaccrual status when, in the judgment of committee members, the probability of collection of interest is deemed insufficient to warrant further accrual. For loans placed on nonaccrual status, the accrual of interest is discontinued and subsequent payments received are applied to the principal balance. Interest income is recorded after principal has been satisfied and as payments are received. Additionally, loans may be placed on nonaccrual status when the loan becomes 90 days past due and any of the following conditions exist: it becomes evident that the borrower will not make payments or will not or cannot meet the Bank's terms for the renewal of a matured loan, full repayment of principal and interest is not expected, the loan has a credit risk rating of substandard, the borrower files bankruptcy and an approved plan of reorganization or liquidation is not anticipated in the near future, or foreclosure action is initiated. When a loan is placed on nonaccrual status, previously accrued but unpaid interest for the current year is deducted from interest income. Prior year unpaid interest

is charged to the allowance for loan losses. Some loans may continue accruing after 90 days if the loan is in the process of renewing, being paid off, or the underlying collateral fully supports both the principal and accrued interest and the loan is in the process of collection.

Nonaccrual loans may be returned to accrual status if all principal and interest amounts contractually owed are reasonably assured of repayment within a reasonable period and there is a period of at least six months to one year of repayment performance by the borrower depending on the contractual payment terms. When loans are returned to accrual status, interest income that was previously applied to the principal balance is not reversed but is recognized into interest income as an adjustment to the yield over the remaining life of the loan. Our Director of Special Assets and CCO must approve the return of loans to accrual status as well as exceptions to any requirements of the non-accrual policy.

- 59 -

---

Generally, commercial, financial, and agricultural loans; construction loans; commercial real estate loans; consumer loans; and finance leases which become 90 days delinquent are either in the process of collection through repossession or foreclosure or are deemed currently uncollectible. The portion of loans deemed currently uncollectible, due to insufficient collateral, are charged-off against the allowance for loan losses. All loans requested to be charged-off must be specifically authorized by the Director of Special Assets and the CCO. Requests may be initiated by collection personnel, bank counsel, loan review, and lending personnel. Charge-offs will be reviewed by the Director of Special Assets and the CCO to ensure the propriety and accuracy of charge-off recommendations. Factors considered when determining loan collectibility and amount to be charged off for all segments in our loan portfolio include delinquent principal or interest repayment, the ability of borrower to make future payments, collateral value of outstanding debt, and the adequacy of guarantors support. It is the responsibility of the Director of Special Assets to report all charge-offs to the Credit Risk Committee for ratification.

**Credit Risk Rating**—We manage credit risk by observing written underwriting standards and lending policy established by the Board of Directors and management to govern all lending activities. The risk management program requires that each individual loan officer review his or her portfolio on a quarterly basis and assign recommended credit ratings on each loan. These efforts are supplemented by independent reviews performed by a loan review officer and other validations performed by the internal audit department. The results of the reviews are reported directly to the Audit Committee of the Board of Directors. Additionally, Bank concentrations are monitored and reported quarterly for risk rating distributions, major standard industry classification segments, real estate concentrations, and collateral distributions.

Consumer and residential real estate loans are normally graded at inception, and the grade generally remains the same throughout the life of the loan. Loan grades on commercial, financial, and agricultural; construction; commercial real estate; and finance leases may be changed at any time when circumstances warrant, and are at a minimum reviewed quarterly.

Loans can be classified into the following three risk rating groupings: pass, special mention, and substandard/doubtful. Factors considered in determining a risk rating grade include debt service capacity, capital structure/liquidity, management, collateral quality, industry risk, company trends/operating performance, repayment source, revenue diversification/customer concentration, quality of financial information, and financing alternatives. Pass grade signifies the highest quality of loans to loans with reasonable credit risk, which may include borrowers with marginally adequate financial performance, but have the ability to repay the debt. Special mention loans have potential weaknesses that warrant extra attention from the loan officer and other management personnel, but still have the ability to repay the debt. Substandard classification includes loans with well-defined weaknesses with risk of potential loss. Loans classified as doubtful are considered to have little recovery value and are charged off.

**Allowance for Loan Losses**—The allowance for loan losses is a valuation account available to absorb probable losses on loans. All losses are charged to the allowance for loan losses when the loss actually occurs or when a determination is made that a loss is likely to occur. Recoveries are credited to the allowance for loan losses at the time of recovery. Quarterly, we estimate the probable level of losses in the existing portfolio through consideration of such factors including, but not limited to, past loan loss experience; estimated losses in significant credits; known deterioration in concentrations of credit; trends in nonperforming assets; volume and composition of the loan portfolio, including percentages of special mention, substandard and past due loans; lending policies and control systems; known inherent risks in the portfolio; adverse situations that may affect the borrower's ability to repay; the estimated value of any underlying collateral; current national and local economic conditions, including the unemployment rate, the price of oil, and real estate absorption time; the experience, ability and depth of lending management; collections personnel experience; and the results of examinations of the loan portfolio by regulatory agencies and others. Based on these estimates, the allowance for loan losses is increased by charges to earnings and decreased by charge-offs (net of

recoveries).

The allowance is composed of general reserves and specific reserves. General reserves are determined by applying loss percentages to segments of the portfolio. The loss percentages are based on each segment's historical loss experience, generally over the past three to five years, and adjustment factors derived from conditions in the Bank's internal and external environment. All loans considered to be impaired are evaluated on an individual basis to determine specific reserve allocations in accordance with GAAP. Loans for which specific reserves are provided are excluded from the calculation of general reserves.

We have an internal loan review department that is independent of the lending function to challenge and corroborate the loan grade assigned by the lender and to provide additional analysis in determining the adequacy of the allowance for loan losses.

- 60 -

---

Management and the Board of Directors believe the allowance for loan losses is appropriate at December 31, 2017. While determination of the allowance for loan losses is based on available information at a given point in time, future additions to the allowance may be necessary based on changes in economic conditions. In addition, various regulatory agencies, as an integral part of their examination process, periodically review our allowance for loan losses. Such agencies may require us to recognize additions or deductions to the allowance based on their judgment and information available to them at the time of their examination.

**Premises and Equipment**—Premises and equipment are stated at cost less accumulated depreciation and amortization. Depreciation and amortization are computed using the straight-line method over the estimated useful lives of the assets. The estimated useful lives used to compute depreciation are:

|                                    |               |
|------------------------------------|---------------|
| Buildings and improvements         | 10 - 40 years |
| Furniture, fixtures, and equipment | 3 - 10 years  |
| Automobiles                        | 3 - 5 years   |

Leasehold improvements are amortized over the estimated useful lives of the improvements or the term of the lease, whichever is shorter.

**Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets**—Goodwill represents the excess of the purchase price over the fair value of the net identifiable assets acquired in a business combination. Goodwill and other intangible assets deemed to have an indefinite useful life are not amortized but instead are subject to review for impairment annually, or more frequently if deemed necessary. Also, in connection with business combinations involving banks and branch locations, we generally record core deposit intangibles representing the value of the acquired core deposit base. Core deposit intangibles are amortized over the estimated useful life of the deposit base, generally on either a straight-line basis not exceeding 15 years or an accelerated basis over 10 years. The remaining useful lives of core deposit intangibles are evaluated periodically to determine whether events and circumstances warrant revision of the remaining period of amortization.

**Cash Surrender Value of Life Insurance**—Life insurance contracts represent single premium life insurance contracts on the lives of certain officers of the Company. The Company is the beneficiary of these policies. These contracts are reported at their cash surrender value and changes in the cash surrender value are included in other noninterest income.

**Other Real Estate Owned**—Real estate properties acquired through, or in lieu of, loan foreclosures are initially recorded at fair value less estimated costs to sell based on a current valuation at the time of foreclosure. After foreclosure, valuations are periodically performed by management and a charge to earnings is recorded if the carrying value of a property exceeds its fair value less estimated costs to sell. Revenues and expenses from operations and changes in the valuation allowance are charged to earnings.

**Assets Held For Sale**—Branch closures are evaluated to determine if the related land, buildings and building improvements should be transferred to assets held for sale in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 360, “Property, Plant and Equipment.” The property is transferred to assets held for sale at the lower of its carrying value or fair value less cost to sell. An impairment loss is recorded at the time of transfer if the carrying value of the assets exceeds the fair value. Impairment losses are recorded as non-interest expense.

**Derivatives**—Derivative financial instruments are recognized as assets and liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets and, as required by ASC 815, the Company records all derivatives at fair value. Accounting for changes in fair value of derivatives differs depending on whether the derivative has been designated and qualifies as part of a hedge relationship, and further, on the type of relationship.

#### Derivatives Designated as Hedging Relationships

The Company has entered into forward interest rate swap contracts to minimize the variability of future cash flows that is caused by changes in interest rates or other economic factors. These derivative instruments were designated as cash flow hedges under ASC Topic 815, Derivatives and Hedging. For cash flow hedges, the effective portion of the gain or loss related to the derivative instrument is initially reported as a component of other comprehensive income and subsequently reclassified into earnings when

- 61 -

---



the forecasted transaction affects earnings or when the hedge is terminated. The ineffective portion of the gain or loss is reported in earnings immediately.

#### Derivatives Not Designated as Hedging Relationships

The Company offers certain derivative instruments directly to qualified commercial lending clients seeking to manage their interest rate risk. These derivative instruments, including interest rate swap agreements, are not designated for hedge accounting and changes in fair value are recognized in earnings immediately. Interest rate swaps are contracts in which a series of interest rate cash flows are exchanged over a prescribed period. The notional balance of interest rate swap agreements held by the Company at December 31, 2017 and 2016 was minimal and not material to the consolidated balance sheets.

**Repurchase Agreements**—Securities sold under agreements to repurchase are secured borrowings treated as financing activities and are carried at the amounts at which the securities will be subsequently reacquired as specified in the respective agreements.

**Deferred Compensation**—We record the expense of deferred compensation agreements over the service periods of the persons covered under these agreements.

**Income Taxes**—Deferred tax assets and liabilities are recorded for future tax consequences attributable to differences between the financial statement carrying amounts of existing assets and liabilities and their respective tax basis. Future tax benefits, such as net operating loss carry forwards, are recognized to the extent that realization of such benefits is more likely than not. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are measured using enacted tax rates expected to apply to taxable income in the years in which the assets and liabilities are expected to be recovered or settled. The effect on deferred tax assets and liabilities of a change in tax rates is recognized in income tax expense in the period that includes the enactment date.

In the event the future tax consequences of differences between the financial reporting bases and the tax bases of our assets and liabilities results in deferred tax assets, an evaluation of the probability of being able to realize the future benefits indicated by such assets is required. A valuation allowance is provided when it is more likely than not that a portion or the full amount of the deferred tax asset will not be realized. In assessing the ability to realize the deferred tax assets, management considers the scheduled reversals of deferred tax liabilities, projected future taxable income, and tax planning strategies. A deferred tax liability is not recognized for portions of the allowance for loan losses for income tax purposes in excess of the financial statement balance. Such a deferred tax liability will only be recognized when it becomes apparent that those temporary differences will reverse in the foreseeable future.

A tax position is recognized as a benefit only if it is “more likely than not” that the tax position would be sustained in a tax examination, with a tax examination being presumed to occur. The amount recognized is the largest amount of tax benefit that is greater than 50 percent more likely of being realized on examination. For tax positions not meeting the “more likely than not” test, no tax benefit is recorded.

The Company recognizes interest and/or penalties related to income tax matters in income tax expense.

**Stock-Based Compensation**—We expense stock-based compensation based upon the grant date fair value of the related equity award over the requisite service period of the employee. The Company accounts for stock-based forfeitures as they occur.

**Basic and Diluted Earnings Per Common Share**—Basic earnings per common share (“EPS”) excludes dilution and is computed by dividing net earnings by the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding for the period.

Diluted EPS reflects the potential dilution that could occur if securities or other contracts to issue common stock were exercised or converted into common stock or resulted in the issuance of common stock that then shared in the earnings of the Company. Diluted EPS is computed by dividing net earnings by the total of the weighted-average number of shares outstanding plus the dilutive effect of outstanding options. The amounts of common stock and additional paid-in capital are adjusted to give retroactive effect to large stock dividends. Small stock dividends, or dividends less than 25% of issued shares at the declaration date, are reflected as an increase in common stock and additional paid-in capital and a decrease in retained earnings for the market value of the shares on the date the dividend is declared.

Comprehensive Income—Generally all recognized revenues, expenses, gains and losses are included in net earnings. Although certain changes in assets and liabilities, such as unrealized gains and losses on available-for-sale securities, are reported as a separate component of the equity section of the consolidated balance sheets, such items, along with net earnings, are components of comprehensive income. We present comprehensive income in a separate consolidated statement of comprehensive income.

- 62 -

---

Statements of Cash Flows—For purposes of reporting cash flows, cash and cash equivalents include cash on hand, amounts due from banks, federal funds sold, and interest-bearing deposits in other banks with original maturities of less than 90 days. Generally, federal funds are sold for one-day periods.

Recent Accounting Pronouncements — ASU 2016-13, Financial Instruments - Credit Losses (Topic 326): Measurement of Credit Losses on Financial Instruments was issued with the intention of improving financial reporting by requiring timely recording of credit losses on loans and other financial instruments held by financial institutions and other organizations. The ASU requires the measurement of all expected credit losses for financial assets not recorded at fair value based on historical experience, current conditions, and reasonable and supportable forecasts. This ASU will be required to be implemented through a cumulative-effect adjustment to retained earnings as of the beginning of the first reporting period in which the amendments are effective. The effective date of this Update is for fiscal years beginning on or after December 15, 2019. The Company is evaluating the impact that ASU 2016-13 will have on its financial position, results of operations, and its financial statement disclosures. The Company is in the process of implementing a new software program to assist in complying with the new standard.

ASU 2017-03, Accounting Changes and Error Corrections (Topic 250) and Investments - Equity Method and Joint Ventures (Topic 323): Amendments to SEC Paragraphs Pursuant to Staff Announcements at the September 22, 2016 and November 17, 2016 EITF Meetings. ASU 2017-03 addresses and codifies the practical considerations and application of the required disclosures under SAB Topic 11.M for the implementation of ASU 2014-09, Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606); ASU 2016-02, Leases (Topic 842); and ASU 2016-13, Financial Instruments-Credit Losses (Topic 326); Measurement of Credit Losses on Financial Instruments. The SEC Staff has emphasized on a number of occasions, including the December 2016 AICPA National Conference on Current SEC and PCAOB Developments, the requirements to disclose the potential material effects of newly issued standards and the importance of providing investors with this information. Such disclosures should explain the impact the new standard is expected to have on the financial statements and how the adoption of the new standard will affect comparability. Entities should discuss both quantitative and qualitative information as available when assessing implementation of a new standard. This ASU was effective immediately for public business entities.

ASU 2017-04, Intangibles - Goodwill and Other (Topic 350): Simplifying the Test for Goodwill Impairment was issued in order to simplify the subsequent measurement of goodwill by eliminating Step 2 from the goodwill impairment test. Under the amendments in this ASU, an entity should perform its annual or interim goodwill impairment test by comparing the fair value of a reporting unit with its carrying amount. An entity will then recognize an impairment charge for the amount by which the carrying amount exceeds the reporting unit's fair value; however, the loss recognized should not exceed the total amount of goodwill allocated to that reporting unit. The effective date of this Update is for fiscal years beginning on or after December 15, 2020. The Company does not expect ASU 2017-04 to have an impact on its goodwill impairment tests.

ASU 2017-08, Receivables - Nonrefundable Fees and Other Costs (Subtopic 310-20), Premium Amortization on Purchased Callable Debt Securities was issued in response to diversity in practice in the amortization period for premiums of callable debt securities and in how the potential for exercise of a call is factored into current impairment assessments. As such, these amendments reduce the amortization period for certain callable debt securities carried at a premium and require the premium to be amortized over the period not to exceed the earliest call date. These amendments do not apply to securities carried at a discount. The effective date of this Update is for fiscal years beginning on or after December 15, 2018. The Company is currently amortizing premiums of callable debt securities over a period through the earliest call date. As a result, it does not expect ASU 2017-08 to have a material impact on its financial position, results of operations or its financial statement disclosures.

ASU 2017-09, Compensation - Stock Compensation (Topic 350): Scope of Modification Accounting was issued in response to diversity in practice when applying the guidance in Topic 718, Compensation-Stock Compensation, to a change to the terms or conditions of a share-based payment award. The update provides guidance about which changes to the terms or conditions of a share-based payment award require an entity to apply modification accounting under Topic 718. The amendments require an entity to account for the effects of a modification unless all of the following conditions are met:

- The fair value (or intrinsic or calculated value if elected) of the modified award is the same as the value of the original award immediately before the original award was modified.
- The vesting conditions of the modified award are the same as the vesting conditions of the original award immediately before the original award is modified.
- The classification of the modified award as an equity instrument or a liability instrument is the same as the classification of the original award immediately before the original award is modified.

The effective date of this Update is for fiscal years beginning on or after December 15, 2017. The amendments in this ASU should be applied prospectively to an award modified on or after the adoption date. Adoption of this Update is not expected to have a material effect on the Company's financial position, results of operations or its financial statement disclosures.

ASU 2017-12, Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815): Targeted Improvements to Accounting for Hedging Activities was issued to better align a company's financial reporting for hedging activities with the economic objectives of those activities. The effective date of this Update is for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018, with early adoption, including adoption in an interim period, permitted. ASU 2017-12 requires a modified retrospective transition method in which the Company will recognize the cumulative effect of the change on the opening balance of each affected component of equity in the consolidated balance sheet as of the date of adoption. While the Company continues to assess all potential impacts of the standard, adoption of this Update is not expected to have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

ASU 2018-02, Income Statement - Reporting Comprehensive Income (Topic 220): Reclassification of Certain Tax Effects from Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income was issued to provide guidance concerning treatment of the so-called stranded tax effects in accumulated other comprehensive income resulting from the reduction in the federal corporate income tax rate to 21% made by the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act of 2017, enacted on December 22 2017. ASU 2018-02 allows a reclassification from accumulated other comprehensive income to retained earnings for the stranded tax effects. ASU No. 2018-02 is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2018, including interim reporting periods within those periods. Early adoption is permitted for financial statements of fiscal years or interim periods which have not yet been issued. The Company elected to early adopt the standard for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2017. The adjustment from accumulated other comprehensive income to retained earnings did not have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

Accounting Changes, Reclassifications and Restatements - Certain items in prior financial statements have been reclassified to conform to the current presentation.

On January 1, 2017, the Company adopted the provisions of ASU 2016-09, "Compensation - Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting". ASU 2016-09 requires that all income tax effects associated with share-based payment awards be reported in earnings as an adjustment to income tax expense. Previously, excess tax benefits associated with share-based payments awards were recorded in additional paid-in-capital when the excess tax benefits were realized. The requirement to report those income tax effects in earnings has been applied to settlements occurring on or after January 1, 2017. ASU 2016-09 also requires that all income tax-related cash flows resulting from share-based payments be reported as operating activities in the statement of cash flows. Previously, income tax benefits at settlement of an award were reported as a reduction to operating cash flows and an increase to financing cash flows to the extent that those benefits exceeded the income tax benefits reported in earnings during the award's vesting period. The Company has elected to apply that change in cash flow classification on a retrospective basis, which resulted in a \$281,000 and \$607,000 increase to net cash from operating activities and a corresponding decrease to net cash from financing activities in the accompanying consolidated statements of cash flows for 2016 and 2015, respectively, as compared to the amounts previously reported.

## 2. INVESTMENT SECURITIES

The portfolio of securities consisted of the following (in thousands):

| December 31, 2017 |            |            |       |
|-------------------|------------|------------|-------|
| Amortized         | Gross      | Gross      | Fair  |
| Cost              | Unrealized | Unrealized | Value |

Edgar Filing: MIDSOUTH BANCORP INC - Form 10-K

|  |           | Gains    | Losses   |           |
|--|-----------|----------|----------|-----------|
| Available-for-sale:                              |           |          |          |           |
| Obligations of state and political subdivisions  | \$23,042  | \$ 209   | \$ 442   | \$22,809  |
| GSE mortgage-backed securities                   | 58,620    | 825      | 321      | 59,124    |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: residential | 202,573   | 90       | 4,508    | 198,155   |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: commercial  | 2,274     | —        | 34       | 2,240     |
| Mutual funds                                     | 2,100     | —        | 39       | 2,061     |
| Corporate debt securities                        | 23,975    | 837      | 10       | 24,802    |
|  | \$312,584 | \$ 1,961 | \$ 5,354 | \$309,191 |

- 64 -

---

|  | December 31, 2016 |                              |                               |               |
|--|-------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|
|  | Amortized<br>Cost | Gross<br>Unrealized<br>Gains | Gross<br>Unrealized<br>Losses | Fair<br>Value |
| Available-for-sale:                              |                   |                              |                               |               |
| Obligations of state and political subdivisions  | \$29,935          | \$ 226                       | \$ 1,020                      | \$29,141      |
| GSE mortgage-backed securities                   | 72,144            | 1,736                        | 302                           | 73,578        |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: residential | 223,602           | 206                          | 3,606                         | 220,202       |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: commercial  | 3,135             | —                            | 53                            | 3,082         |
| Mutual funds                                     | 2,100             | —                            | 41                            | 2,059         |
| Corporate debt securities                        | 13,500            | 311                          | —                             | 13,811        |
|  | \$344,416         | \$ 2,479                     | \$ 5,022                      | \$341,873     |

|  | December 31, 2017 |                              |                               |               |
|--|-------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|
|  | Amortized<br>Cost | Gross<br>Unrealized<br>Gains | Gross<br>Unrealized<br>Losses | Fair<br>Value |
| Held-to-maturity:                                |                   |                              |                               |               |
| Obligations of state and political subdivisions  | \$35,908          | \$ 265                       | \$ 22                         | \$36,151      |
| GSE mortgage-backed securities                   | 35,751            | 171                          | 219                           | 35,703        |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: residential | 7,450             | —                            | 321                           | 7,129         |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: commercial  | 1,943             | —                            | 6                             | 1,937         |
|  | \$81,052          | \$ 436                       | \$ 568                        | \$80,920      |

|  | December 31, 2016 |                              |                               |               |
|--|-------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|
|  | Amortized<br>Cost | Gross<br>Unrealized<br>Gains | Gross<br>Unrealized<br>Losses | Fair<br>Value |
| Held-to-maturity:                                |                   |                              |                               |               |
| Obligations of state and political subdivisions  | \$40,515          | \$ 309                       | \$ 39                         | \$40,785      |
| GSE mortgage-backed securities                   | 44,375            | 426                          | 311                           | 44,490        |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: residential | 8,969             | —                            | 323                           | 8,646         |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: commercial  | 4,352             | —                            | 12                            | 4,340         |
|  | \$98,211          | \$ 735                       | \$ 685                        | \$98,261      |

With the exception of one private-label collateralized mortgage obligations ("CMOs") with a combined balance remaining of \$7,000 and \$18,000 at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively, all of the Company's CMOs are government-sponsored enterprise securities.

The amortized cost and fair value of debt securities at December 31, 2017 by contractual maturity are shown below (in thousands). Actual maturities may differ from contractual maturities because of rights to call or repay obligations with or without penalties and scheduled and unscheduled principal payments on mortgage-backed securities and collateralized mortgage obligations.

|  | Amortized Fair |            |
|--|----------------|------------|
|  | Cost           | Value      |
| Available-for-sale:                    |                |            |
| Due in one year or less                | \$ 1,135       | \$ 1,136   |
| Due after one year through five years  | 8,425          | 8,595      |
| Due after five years through ten years | 42,340         | 43,299     |
| Due after ten years                    | 258,584        | 254,100    |
|  | \$ 310,484     | \$ 307,130 |

|  | Amortized Fair |           |
|--|----------------|-----------|
|  | Cost           | Value     |
| Held-to-maturity:                      |                |           |
| Due in one year or less                | \$ 1,201       | \$ 1,202  |
| Due after one year through five years  | 5,395          | 5,385     |
| Due after five years through ten years | 41,784         | 41,968    |
| Due after ten years                    | 32,672         | 32,365    |
|  | \$ 81,052      | \$ 80,920 |

Details concerning investment securities with unrealized losses are as follows (in thousands):

|  | December 31, 2017                      |                       |                                       |                       |            |                       |
|--|--|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------|-----------------------|
|  | Securities with losses under 12 months |                       | Securities with losses over 12 months |                       | Total      |                       |
|  | Fair Value                             | Gross Unrealized Loss | Fair Value                            | Gross Unrealized Loss | Fair Value | Gross Unrealized Loss |
| Available-for-sale:                              |  |                       |                                       |                       |            |                       |
| Obligations of state and political subdivisions  | \$ 596                                 | \$ 5                  | \$ 12,716                             | \$ 437                | \$ 13,312  | \$ 442                |
| GSE mortgage-backed securities                   | 29,725                                 | 224                   | 5,858                                 | 97                    | 35,583     | 321                   |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: residential | 57,665                                 | 548                   | 137,598                               | 3,960                 | 195,263    | 4,508                 |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: commercial  | —                                      | —                     | 2,240                                 | 34                    | 2,240      | 34                    |
| Mutual funds                                     | 2,061                                  | 39                    | —                                     | —                     | 2,061      | 39                    |
| Corporate debt securities                        | 2,990                                  | 10                    | —                                     | —                     | 2,990      | 10                    |
|  | \$ 93,037                              | \$ 826                | \$ 158,412                            | \$ 4,528              | \$ 251,449 | \$ 5,354              |



|  | December 31, 2016                      |                       |                                       |                       |            |                       |
|--|--|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------|-----------------------|
|  | Securities with losses under 12 months |                       | Securities with losses over 12 months |                       | Total      |                       |
|  | Fair Value                             | Gross Unrealized Loss | Fair Value                            | Gross Unrealized Loss | Fair Value | Gross Unrealized Loss |
| Available-for-sale:                              |  |                       |                                       |                       |            |                       |
| Obligations of state and political subdivisions  | \$13,402                               | \$ 1,020              | \$—                                   | \$ —                  | \$13,402   | \$ 1,020              |
| GSE mortgage-backed securities                   | 29,119                                 | 302                   | —                                     | —                     | 29,119     | 302                   |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: residential | 187,235                                | 3,099                 | 14,194                                | 507                   | 201,429    | 3,606                 |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: commercial  | 961                                    | 4                     | 2,121                                 | 49                    | 3,082      | 53                    |
| Mutual funds                                     | 2,059                                  | 41                    | —                                     | —                     | 2,059      | 41                    |
|  | \$232,776                              | \$ 4,466              | \$16,315                              | \$ 556                | \$249,091  | \$ 5,022              |
|  | December 31, 2017                      |                       |                                       |                       |            |                       |
|  | Securities with losses under 12 months |                       | Securities with losses over 12 months |                       | Total      |                       |
|  | Fair Value                             | Gross Unrealized Loss | Fair Value                            | Gross Unrealized Loss | Fair Value | Gross Unrealized Loss |
| Held-to-maturity:                                |  |                       |                                       |                       |            |                       |
| Obligations of state and political subdivisions  | \$6,340                                | \$ 22                 | \$—                                   | \$ —                  | \$6,340    | \$ 22                 |
| GSE mortgage-backed securities                   | 11,201                                 | 89                    | 4,961                                 | 130                   | 16,162     | 219                   |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: residential | —                                      | —                     | 7,129                                 | 321                   | 7,129      | 321                   |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: commercial  | 1,937                                  | 6                     | —                                     | —                     | 1,937      | 6                     |
|  | \$19,478                               | \$ 117                | \$12,090                              | \$ 451                | \$31,568   | \$ 568                |
|  | December 31, 2016                      |                       |                                       |                       |            |                       |
|  | Securities with losses under 12 months |                       | Securities with losses over 12 months |                       | Total      |                       |
|  | Fair Value                             | Gross Unrealized Loss | Fair Value                            | Gross Unrealized Loss | Fair Value | Gross Unrealized Loss |
| Held-to-maturity:                                |  |                       |                                       |                       |            |                       |
| Obligations of state and political subdivisions  | \$8,054                                | \$ 39                 | \$—                                   | \$ —                  | \$8,054    | \$ 39                 |
| GSE mortgage-backed securities                   | 19,408                                 | 311                   | —                                     | —                     | 19,408     | 311                   |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: residential | —                                      | —                     | 8,645                                 | 323                   | 8,645      | 323                   |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: commercial  | 4,340                                  | 12                    | —                                     | —                     | 4,340      | 12                    |
|  | \$31,802                               | \$ 362                | \$8,645                               | \$ 323                | \$40,447   | \$ 685                |

Management evaluates whether unrealized losses on securities represent impairment that is other than temporary on a quarterly basis. For debt securities, the Company considers its intent to sell the securities or if it is more likely than not the Company will be required to sell the securities. If such impairment is identified, based upon the intent to sell or the more likely than not threshold, the carrying amount of the security is reduced to fair value with a charge to earnings. Upon the result of the aforementioned review, management then reviews for potential other than temporary impairment based upon other qualitative



factors. In making this evaluation, management considers changes in market rates relative to those available when the security was acquired, changes in market expectations about the timing of cash flows from securities that can be prepaid, performance of the debt security, and changes in the market's perception of the issuer's financial health and the security's credit quality. If determined that a debt security has incurred other than temporary impairment, then the amount of the credit related impairment is determined. For equity securities, management reviews the near term prospects of the issuer, the nature and cause of the unrealized loss, the severity and duration of the impairments and other factors when determining if an unrealized loss is other than temporary. If a credit loss is evident, the amount of the credit loss is charged to earnings and the non-credit related impairment is recognized through other comprehensive income.

As of December 31, 2017, 84 securities had unrealized losses totaling 2.05% of the individual securities' amortized cost basis and 1.51% of the Company's total amortized cost basis. 46 of the 84 securities had been in an unrealized loss position for over twelve months at December 31, 2017. These 46 securities had an amortized cost basis and unrealized loss of \$175.5 million and \$5.0 million, respectively. The unrealized losses on securities at December 31, 2017 and 2016 resulted from changing market interest rates over the yields available at the time the underlying securities were purchased. Management identified no impairment related to credit quality. At December 31, 2017 and 2016, management had both the intent and ability to hold impaired securities, and no impairment was evaluated as other than temporary. As a result, no impairment losses were recognized on securities during the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, or 2015.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company sold 16 securities classified as available-for-sale and 1 security classified as held-to-maturity. Of the available-for-sale securities, 13 securities were sold with gains totaling \$449,000 and 3 securities were sold at a loss of \$109,000 for a net gain of \$340,000. The decision to sell the 1 held-to-maturity security, which was sold at a gain of \$7,000, was based on the pre-refunding of the bond which would accelerate the maturity of the bond by 15 years with an anticipated call date within six months. During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company sold 2 securities classified as available-for-sale at a gross gain of \$20,000. During the year ended December 31, 2015, the Company sold 22 securities classified as available-for-sale at a net gain of \$1.2 million. Of the 22 securities sold, 12 were sold with gains totaling \$1.4 million and 10 securities were sold at a loss of \$135,000.

Securities with an aggregate carrying value of approximately \$177.9 million and \$293.4 million at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively, were pledged to secure public funds on deposit and for other purposes required or permitted by law.

### 3. LOANS

The loan portfolio consisted of the following (in thousands):

|  | December 31, |           |
|--|--------------|-----------|
|  | 2017         | 2016      |
| Commercial, financial and agricultural | \$435,207    | \$459,574 |
| Real estate – construction             | 90,287       | 100,959   |
| Real estate – commercial               | 448,406      | 481,155   |
| Real estate – residential              | 146,751      | 157,872   |
| Installment loans to individuals       | 56,398       | 82,660    |
| Lease financing receivable             | 732          | 1,095     |
| Other                                  | 5,645        | 767       |
|  | 1,183,426    | 1,284,082 |
| Less allowance for loan losses         | (26,888 )    | (24,372 ) |

\$1,156,538 \$1,259,710

The amounts reported in other loans at December 31, 2017 and 2016 includes the overdrawn demand deposit accounts and loans primarily made to non-profit entities reported for each period.

An analysis of the activity in the allowance for loan losses is as follows (in thousands):

- 68 -

---

|                            | December 31, |          |          |
|----------------------------|--------------|----------|----------|
|                            | 2017         | 2016     | 2015     |
| Balance, beginning of year | \$24,372     | \$19,011 | \$11,226 |
| Provision for loan losses  | 30,200       | 10,600   | 13,900   |
| Recoveries                 | 1,193        | 776      | 459      |
| Loans charged-off          | (28,877 )    | (6,015 ) | (6,574 ) |
| Balance, end of year       | \$26,888     | \$24,372 | \$19,011 |

The Company monitors loan concentrations and evaluates individual customer and aggregate industry leverage, profitability, risk rating distributions, and liquidity for each major standard industry classification segment. At December 31, 2017, one industry segment concentration, the oil and gas industry, aggregates more than 10% of the loan portfolio. The Company's exposure in the oil and gas industry, including related service and manufacturing industries, totaled approximately \$179.7 million, or 15.2% of total loans. Of the \$179.7 million loans to borrowers in the oil and gas industry, \$16.2 million or 9.0% were on nonaccrual status at December 31, 2017. Additionally, the Company's exposure to CRE loans is monitored. At December 31, 2017, CRE loans (including commercial construction and multifamily loans) totaled approximately \$510.8 million, 54% of which are secured by owner-occupied commercial properties. Of the \$510.8 million in loans secured by commercial real estate, \$11.1 million or 2.2% were on nonaccrual status at December 31, 2017.

A rollforward of the activity within the allowance for loan losses by loan type and recorded investment in loans for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 is as follows (in thousands):

|   | December 31, 2017       |              |            |             |                         |                         |         |             |
|---|-------------------------|--------------|------------|-------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|---------|-------------|
|   | Real Estate             |              |            |             | Installment Lease       |                         |         | Total       |
|   | Coml, fin,<br>and agric | Construction | Commercial | Residential | loans to<br>individuals | financing<br>receivable | Other   |             |
| Allowance for loan losses:                          |                         |              |            |             |                         |                         |         |             |
| Beginning balance                                   | \$16,057                | \$585        | \$5,384    | \$940       | \$1,395                 | \$5                     | \$6     | \$24,372    |
| Charge-offs   | (20,451 )               | (70 )        | (6,648 )   | (543 )      | (1,165 )                | —                       | —       | (28,877 )   |
| Recoveries  | 652                     | —            | 162        | 105         | 274                     | —                       | —       | 1,193       |
| Provision   | 24,319                  | 81           | 4,995      | 335         | 453                     | (2 )                    | 19      | 30,200      |
| Ending balance                                      | \$20,577                | \$596        | \$3,893    | \$837       | \$957                   | \$3                     | \$25    | \$26,888    |
| Ending balance:                                     |                         |              |            |             |                         |                         |         |             |
| individually evaluated for<br>impairment            | \$7,197                 | \$23         | \$131      | \$5         | \$14                    | \$—                     | \$—     | \$7,370     |
| Ending balance:                                     |                         |              |            |             |                         |                         |         |             |
| collectively evaluated for<br>impairment            | \$13,380                | \$573        | \$3,762    | \$832       | \$943                   | \$3                     | \$25    | \$19,518    |
| Loans:  |                         |              |            |             |                         |                         |         |             |
| Ending balance                                      | \$435,207               | \$90,287     | \$448,406  | \$146,751   | \$56,398                | \$732                   | \$5,645 | \$1,183,426 |
| Ending balance:                                     |                         |              |            |             |                         |                         |         |             |
| individually evaluated for<br>impairment            | \$38,778                | \$66         | \$11,128   | \$618       | \$48                    | \$—                     | \$—     | \$50,638    |
| Ending balance:                                     |                         |              |            |             |                         |                         |         |             |
| collectively evaluated for<br>impairment            | \$396,429               | \$90,221     | \$437,278  | \$146,071   | \$56,350                | \$732                   | \$5,645 | \$1,132,726 |
| Ending balance: loans<br>acquired with deteriorated | \$—                     | \$—          | \$—        | \$62        | \$—                     | \$—                     | \$—     | \$62        |

credit quality

- 69 -

---

Edgar Filing: MIDSOUTH BANCORP INC - Form 10-K

December 31, 2016

Real Estate

|   | Coml, fin,<br>and agric | Construction | Commercial | Residential | Installment<br>loans to<br>individuals | Lease<br>financing<br>receivable | Other | Total       |
|---|-------------------------|--------------|------------|-------------|--|----------------------------------|-------|-------------|
| Allowance for loan losses:                                      |                         |              |            |             |  |                                  |       |             |
| Beginning balance   | \$11,268                | \$819        | \$4,614    | \$816       | \$1,468                                | \$14                             | \$12  | \$19,011    |
| Charge-offs   | (4,366)                 | —            | (218)      | (24)        | (1,407)                                | —                                | —     | (6,015)     |
| Recoveries  | 459                     | —            | 123        | 5           | 189                                    | —                                | —     | 776         |
| Provision   | 8,696                   | (234)        | 865        | 143         | 1,145                                  | (9)                              | (6)   | 10,600      |
| Ending balance  | \$16,057                | \$585        | \$5,384    | \$940       | \$1,395                                | \$5                              | \$6   | \$24,372    |
| Ending balance:   |                         |              |            |             |  |                                  |       |             |
| individually evaluated for impairment                           | \$4,369                 | \$—          | \$2,216    | \$260       | \$308                                  | \$—                              | \$—   | \$7,153     |
| Ending balance:   |                         |              |            |             |  |                                  |       |             |
| collectively evaluated for impairment                           | \$11,688                | \$585        | \$3,168    | \$680       | \$1,087                                | \$5                              | \$6   | \$17,219    |
| Loans:  |                         |              |            |             |  |                                  |       |             |
| Ending balance  | \$459,574               | \$100,959    | \$481,155  | \$157,872   | \$82,660                               | \$1,095                          | \$767 | \$1,284,082 |
| Ending balance:   |                         |              |            |             |  |                                  |       |             |
| individually evaluated for impairment                           | \$31,473                | \$9          | \$28,689   | \$1,826     | \$541                                  | \$—                              | \$—   | \$62,538    |
| Ending balance:   |                         |              |            |             |  |                                  |       |             |
| collectively evaluated for impairment                           | \$428,101               | \$100,950    | \$451,887  | \$155,975   | \$82,119                               | \$1,095                          | \$767 | \$1,220,894 |
| Ending balance: loans acquired with deteriorated credit quality | \$—                     | \$—          | \$579      | \$71        | \$—                                    | \$—                              | \$—   | \$650       |

An aging analysis of past due loans (including both accruing and non-accruing loans) is as follows (in thousands):

|   | December 31, 2017            |                              |   |                      |             |                |  |
|---|------------------------------|------------------------------|---|----------------------|-------------|----------------|--|
|   | 30-59<br>Days<br>Past<br>Due | 60-89<br>Days<br>Past<br>Due | Greater<br>than 90<br>Days<br>Past<br>Due | Total<br>Past<br>Due | Current     | Total<br>Loans | Recorded<br>Investment<br>> 90 days<br>and<br>Accruing |
| Commercial, financial, and agricultural | \$1,195                      | \$1,893                      | \$14,847                                  | \$17,935             | \$417,272   | \$435,207      | \$545  |
| Real estate - construction              | 616                          | —                            | 190                                       | 806                  | 89,481      | 90,287         | 125  |
| Real estate - commercial                | 5,889                        | 6,402                        | 4,163                                     | 16,454               | 431,952     | 448,406        | 58   |
| Real estate - residential               | 1,065                        | 235                          | 559                                       | 1,859                | 144,892     | 146,751        | —  |
| Installment loans to individuals        | 276                          | 32                           | 34  | 342                  | 56,056      | 56,398         | —  |
| Lease financing receivable              | —                            | —                            | —   | —                    | 732         | 732            | —  |
| Other                                   | —                            | —                            | —   | —                    | 5,645       | 5,645          | —  |
|   | \$9,041                      | \$8,562                      | \$19,793                                  | \$37,396             | \$1,146,030 | \$1,183,426    | \$728  |





|   | December 31, 2016            |                              |   |                      | Current     | Total<br>Loans | Recorded<br>Investment<br>> 90 days<br>and<br>Accruing |
|---|------------------------------|------------------------------|---|----------------------|-------------|----------------|--|
|   | 30-59<br>Days<br>Past<br>Due | 60-89<br>Days<br>Past<br>Due | Greater<br>than 90<br>Days<br>Past<br>Due | Total<br>Past<br>Due |             |                |  |
| Commercial, financial, and agricultural | \$2,297                      | \$902                        | \$31,425                                  | \$34,624             | \$424,950   | \$459,574      | \$ 96  |
| Real estate - construction              | 2,613                        | 399                          | 9   | 3,021                | 97,938      | 100,959        | —  |
| Real estate - commercial                | 5,159                        | 1,931                        | 25,408                                    | 32,498               | 448,657     | 481,155        | 140  |
| Real estate - residential               | 1,956                        | 207                          | 1,553                                     | 3,716                | 154,156     | 157,872        | 16   |
| Installment loans to individuals        | 756                          | 36                           | 538                                       | 1,330                | 81,330      | 82,660         | 16   |
| Lease financing receivable              | —                            | —                            | —   | —                    | 1,095       | 1,095          | —  |
| Other                                   | 89                           | 5                            | —   | 94                   | 673         | 767            | —  |
|   | \$12,870                     | \$3,480                      | \$58,933                                  | \$75,283             | \$1,208,799 | \$1,284,082    | \$ 268   |

Non-accrual loans are as follows (in thousands):

|  | December 31, |          |
|--|--------------|----------|
|  | 2017         | 2016     |
| Commercial, financial and agricultural | \$37,418     | \$31,461 |
| Real estate - construction             | 66           | 9        |
| Real estate - commercial               | 11,128       | 28,688   |
| Real estate - residential              | 618          | 1,881    |
| Installment loans to individuals       | 48           | 541      |
|  | \$49,278     | \$62,580 |

The amount of interest that would have been recorded on nonaccrual loans, had the loans not been classified as nonaccrual, totaled approximately \$3.3 million, \$3.4 million, and \$2.0 million for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015. Interest actually received on nonaccrual loans at December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015 was \$323,000, \$168,000, and \$47,000, respectively.

Edgar Filing: MIDSOUTH BANCORP INC - Form 10-K

Loans that are individually evaluated for impairment are as follows (in thousands). Interest income recognized represents interest on accruing loans modified in a TDR:

|   | December 31, 2017   |                          |                   |                             |                            |
|---|---------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
|   | Recorded Investment | Unpaid Principal Balance | Related Allowance | Average Recorded Investment | Interest Income Recognized |
| With no related allowance recorded:     |                     |                          |                   |                             |                            |
| Commercial, financial, and agricultural | \$24,659            | \$ 30,630                | \$ —              | \$ 19,880                   | \$ 90                      |
| Real estate - construction              | —                   | —                        | —                 | 5                           | —                          |
| Real estate - commercial                | 10,471              | 11,965                   | —                 | 11,590                      | —                          |
| Real estate - residential               | 302                 | 302                      | —                 | 602                         | —                          |
| Installment loans to individuals        | —                   | —                        | —                 | 37                          | —                          |
| Subtotal:                               | 35,432              | 42,897                   | —                 | 32,114                      | 90                         |
| With an allowance recorded:             |                     |                          |                   |                             |                            |
| Commercial, financial, and agricultural | 14,119              | 14,150                   | 7,197             | 15,245                      | 1                          |
| Real estate - construction              | 66                  | 136                      | 23                | 33                          | —                          |
| Real estate - commercial                | 657                 | 657                      | 131               | 8,318                       | —                          |
| Real estate - residential               | 316                 | 316                      | 5                 | 620                         | —                          |
| Installment loans to individuals        | 48                  | 50                       | 14                | 258                         | —                          |
| Subtotal:                               | 15,206              | 15,309                   | 7,370             | 24,474                      | 1                          |
| Totals:                                 |                     |                          |                   |                             |                            |
| Commercial                              | 49,906              | 57,402                   | 7,328             | 55,033                      | 91                         |
| Construction                            | 66                  | 136                      | 23                | 38                          | —                          |
| Residential                             | 618                 | 618                      | 5                 | 1,222                       | —                          |
| Consumer                                | 48                  | 50                       | 14                | 295                         | —                          |
| Grand total:                            | \$50,638            | \$ 58,206                | \$ 7,370          | \$ 56,588                   | \$ 91                      |
|   | December 31, 2016   |                          |                   |                             |                            |
|   | Recorded Investment | Unpaid Principal Balance | Related Allowance | Average Recorded Investment | Interest Income Recognized |
| With no related allowance recorded:     |                     |                          |                   |                             |                            |
| Commercial, financial, and agricultural | \$15,101            | \$ 15,428                | \$ —              | \$ 18,815                   | \$ 115                     |
| Real estate - construction              | 9                   | 9                        | —                 | 23                          | —                          |
| Real estate - commercial                | 12,710              | 12,710                   | —                 | 9,297                       | 14                         |
| Real estate - residential               | 903                 | 903                      | —                 | 1,134                       | —                          |
| Installment loans to individuals        | 73                  | 87                       | —                 | 54                          | —                          |
| Subtotal:                               | 28,796              | 29,137                   | —                 | 29,323                      | 129                        |
| With an allowance recorded:             |                     |                          |                   |                             |                            |
| Commercial, financial, and agricultural | 16,372              | 16,470                   | 4,369             | 10,781                      | 1                          |
| Real estate - commercial                | 15,979              | 15,979                   | 2,216             | 14,992                      | —                          |
| Real estate - residential               | 923                 | 923                      | 260               | 730                         | —                          |
| Installment loans to individuals        | 468                 | 478                      | 308               | 419                         | —                          |
| Subtotal:                               | 33,742              | 33,850                   | 7,153             | 26,922                      | 1                          |
| Totals:                                 |                     |                          |                   |                             |                            |
| Commercial                              | 60,162              | 60,587                   | 6,585             | 53,885                      | 130                        |
| Construction                            | 9                   | 9                        | —                 | 23                          | —                          |
| Residential                             | 1,826               | 1,826                    | 260               | 1,864                       | —                          |
| Consumer                                | 541                 | 565                      | 308               | 473                         | —                          |
| Grand total:                            | \$62,538            | \$ 62,987                | \$ 7,153          | \$ 56,245                   | \$ 130                     |



Loans are categorized into risk categories based on relevant information about the ability of borrowers to serve their debt, such as: current financial information, historical payment experience, credit documentation, public information, current economic trends, and other factors. Loans are analyzed individually and classified according to their credit risk. This analysis is performed on a continuous basis. The following definitions are used for risk ratings:

**Special Mention:** Weakness exists that could cause future impairment, including the deterioration of financial ratios, past due status, and questionable management capabilities. Collateral values generally afford adequate coverage but may not be immediately marketable.

**Substandard:** Specific and well-defined weaknesses exist that may include poor liquidity and deterioration of financial ratios. Currently the borrower maintains the capacity to service the debt. The loan may be past due and related deposit accounts experiencing overdrafts. Immediate corrective action is necessary.

**Doubtful:** Specific weaknesses characterized as Substandard exist that are severe enough to make collection in full unlikely. There is no reliable secondary source of full repayment. Loans classified as Doubtful will usually be placed on non-accrual status. The probability of some loss is extremely high but because of certain important and reasonably specific factors, the amount of loss cannot be determined.

Loans not meeting the criteria above that are analyzed individually as part of the above-described process are considered to be Pass rated loans.



The following tables present the classes of loans by risk rating (in thousands):

December 31, 2017

Commercial Credit Exposure

Credit Risk Profile by Creditworthiness Category

|                 | Commercial,<br>financial,<br>and<br>agricultural | Real estate -<br>commercial | Total     | Percentage<br>of Total |   |
|-----------------|--|-----------------------------|-----------|------------------------|---|
| Pass            | \$358,373  | \$411,280                   | \$769,653 | 87.10                  | % |
| Special mention | 9,687  | 3,823                       | 13,510    | 1.53                   | % |
| Substandard     | 67,147   | 33,303                      | 100,450   | 11.37                  | % |
|                 | \$435,207  | \$448,406                   | \$883,613 | 100.00                 | % |

Construction Credit Exposure

Credit Risk Profile by Creditworthiness Category

|                 | Real estate -<br>construction | Percentage<br>of Total |   |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|---|
| Pass            | \$89,323                      | 98.93                  | % |
| Special mention | 600                           | 0.67                   | % |
| Substandard     | 364                           | 0.40                   | % |
|                 | \$90,287                      | 100.00                 | % |

Residential Credit Exposure

Credit Risk Profile by Creditworthiness Category

|                 | Real estate<br>-<br>Residential | Percentage<br>of Total |   |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|---|
| Pass            | \$144,250                       | 98.30                  | % |
| Special mention | 1,233                           | 0.84                   | % |
| Substandard     | 1,268                           | 0.86                   | % |
|                 | \$146,751                       | 100.00                 | % |

Consumer and Commercial Credit Exposure

Credit Risk Profile Based on Payment Activity

|               | Installment<br>loans to<br>individuals | Lease<br>financing<br>receivable | Other   | Total    | Percentage<br>of Total |   |
|---------------|--|----------------------------------|---------|----------|------------------------|---|
| Performing    | \$56,041                               | \$699                            | \$5,645 | \$62,385 | 99.38                  | % |
| Nonperforming | 357                                    | 33                               | —       | 390      | 0.62                   | % |
|               | \$56,398                               | \$732                            | \$5,645 | \$62,775 | 100.00                 | % |

December 31, 2016

## Commercial Credit Exposure

## Credit Risk Profile by Creditworthiness Category

|                 | Commercial,<br>financial, and<br>agricultural | Real estate -<br>commercial | Total     | Percentage<br>of Total |   |
|-----------------|---|-----------------------------|-----------|------------------------|---|
| Pass            | \$346,246                                     | \$ 420,970                  | \$767,216 | 81.56                  | % |
| Special mention | 22,611  | 23,085                      | 45,696    | 4.86                   | % |
| Substandard     | 90,300  | 37,100                      | 127,400   | 13.54                  | % |
| Doubtful        | 417   | —                           | 417       | 0.04                   | % |
|                 | \$459,574                                     | \$ 481,155                  | \$940,729 | 100.00                 | % |

## Construction Credit Exposure

## Credit Risk Profile by Creditworthiness Category

|                 | Real estate -<br>construction | Percentage<br>of Total |   |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|---|
| Pass            | \$ 100,775                    | 99.82                  | % |
| Special mention | —                             | —                      | % |
| Substandard     | 184                           | 0.18                   | % |
|                 | \$ 100,959                    | 100.00                 | % |

## Residential Credit Exposure

## Credit Risk Profile by Creditworthiness Category

|                 | Real estate<br>-<br>Residential | Percentage<br>of Total |   |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|---|
| Pass            | \$ 153,403                      | 97.17                  | % |
| Special mention | 1,181                           | 0.75                   | % |
| Substandard     | 3,288                           | 2.08                   | % |
|                 | \$ 157,872                      | 100.00                 | % |

## Consumer and Commercial Credit Exposure

## Credit Risk Profile Based on Payment Activity

|               | Installment<br>loans to<br>individuals | Lease<br>financing<br>receivable | Other  | Total    | Percentage<br>of Total |   |
|---------------|--|----------------------------------|--------|----------|------------------------|---|
| Performing    | \$ 82,103                              | \$ 1,095                         | \$ 767 | \$83,965 | 99.34                  | % |
| Nonperforming | 557                                    | —                                | —      | 557      | 0.66                   | % |
|               | \$ 82,660                              | \$ 1,095                         | \$ 767 | \$84,522 | 100.00                 | % |

## Troubled Debt Restructurings

A troubled debt restructuring (“TDR”) is a restructuring of a debt made by the Company to a debtor for economic or legal reasons related to the debtor’s financial difficulties that it would not otherwise consider. The Company grants the concession in an attempt to protect as much of its investment as possible.





The following tables present information about TDRs that were modified during the years ended December 31:

|  | 2017<br>Number<br>of recorded<br>loan<br>investment<br>modifications | 2016<br>Number<br>of recorded<br>loan<br>investment<br>modifications |
|--|--|--|
| Commercial, financial and agricultural | 6 \$ 2,002   | 2 \$ 3,943   |
| Real estate – commercial               | —  | 2 1,572  |
|  | 6 \$ 2,002   | 4 \$ 5,515   |

The following table presents TDRs that had a payment default during the twelve-month periods ending December 31, 2017 and 2016, and that were modified within the previous 12 months. The Company defines a payment default as any loan that is greater than 30 days past due or was past due greater than 30 days at any point during the reporting period, or since the date of modification, whichever is shorter.

|  | 2017<br>Recorded<br>Investment | 2016<br>Recorded<br>Investment |
|--|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Commercial, financial and agricultural | \$ 18                          | \$ 3,943                       |
| Real estate – commercial               | —                              | 1,572                          |
|  | \$ 18                          | \$ 5,515                       |

For purposes of the determination of an allowance for loan losses on these TDRs, as an identified TDR, the Company considers a loss probable on the loan and, as a result is reviewed for specific impairment in accordance with the Company's allowance for loan loss methodology. If it is determined losses are probable on such TDRs, either because of delinquency or other credit quality indicator, the Company establishes specific reserves for these loans. As of December 31, 2017, there were no commitments to lend additional funds to debtors owing sums to the Company whose terms have been modified in TDRs.

In the opinion of management, all transactions entered into between the Company and such related parties have been and are made in the ordinary course of business, on substantially the same terms and conditions, including interest rates and collateral, as similar transactions with unaffiliated persons and do not involve more than the normal risk of collection.

An analysis of the 2017 activity with respect to these related party loans and commitments to extend credit is as follows (in thousands):

|                            |          |
|----------------------------|----------|
| Balance, beginning of year | \$ 1,951 |
| New loans                  | 453      |
| Repayments and adjustments | (573 )   |
| Balance, end of year       | \$ 1,831 |

#### 4. PREMISES AND EQUIPMENT

Premises and equipment consisted of the following (in thousands):

|  | December 31, |           |
|--|--------------|-----------|
|  | 2017         | 2016      |
| Land   | \$15,030     | \$17,693  |
| Buildings and improvements                     | 52,955       | 56,674    |
| Furniture, fixtures, and equipment             | 29,572       | 29,042    |
| Automobiles                                    | 1,596        | 1,854     |
| Leasehold improvements                         | 9,261        | 10,671    |
| Construction-in-process                        | 530          | 899       |
|  | 108,944      | 116,833   |
| Less accumulated depreciation and amortization | (49,887 )    | (47,879 ) |
|  | \$59,057     | \$68,954  |

Depreciation expense totaled approximately \$5.7 million, \$5.9 million, and \$6.2 million for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively.

#### 5. GOODWILL AND OTHER INTANGIBLE ASSETS

The carrying amount of goodwill for each of the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 was approximately \$42.2 million. Goodwill is recorded on the acquisition date of each entity.

A summary of core deposit intangible assets as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 is as follows (in thousands):

|                               | 2017     | 2016     |
|-------------------------------|----------|----------|
| Gross carrying amount         | \$11,674 | \$11,674 |
| Less accumulated amortization | (8,159 ) | (7,053 ) |
| Net carrying amount           | \$3,515  | \$4,621  |

Amortization expense on the core deposit intangible assets totaled approximately \$1.1 million in 2017, 2016 and 2015.

The estimated amortization expense on the core deposit intangible assets for the four succeeding years is as follows (in thousands):

|      |         |
|------|---------|
| 2018 | \$1,106 |
| 2019 | 1,106   |
| 2020 | 726     |
| 2021 | 577     |
|      | \$3,515 |

## 6. DEPOSITS

Deposits consisted of the following (in thousands):

|                               | December 31, |             |
|-------------------------------|--------------|-------------|
|                               | 2017         | 2016        |
| Noninterest-bearing           | \$416,547    | \$414,921   |
| Savings and money market      | 446,215      | 539,815     |
| NOW accounts                  | 434,646      | 472,484     |
| Time deposits less than \$250 | 156,296      | 120,399     |
| Time deposits \$250 or more   | 25,985       | 31,811      |
|                               | \$1,479,689  | \$1,579,430 |

Public funds deposits totaled \$110.1 million and \$146.2 million at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

At December 31, 2017, the Company had outstanding brokered certificates of deposits of \$45.8 million with a weighted average interest rate of 1.76%. Of the \$45.8 million in brokered certificates of deposits, \$24.9 million matures on July 15, 2019 and is callable anytime on or after January 14, 2018. The remaining \$20.9 million matures on July 13, 2020 and is callable on July 12, 2018 and quarterly thereafter. There were no brokered deposits at December 31, 2016.

Time deposits held consist primarily of certificates of deposits. The maturities for these deposits at December 31, 2017 are as follows (in thousands):

|                         |           |
|-------------------------|-----------|
| 2018                    | \$97,603  |
| 2019                    | 44,118    |
| 2020                    | 28,865    |
| 2021                    | 5,591     |
| 2022                    | 6,102     |
| Thereafter <sup>2</sup> | \$182,281 |

Deposits from related parties totaled approximately \$11.9 million and \$17.6 million at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

## 7. SECURITIES SOLD UNDER AGREEMENTS TO REPURCHASE

Securities sold under agreements to repurchase totaled \$67.1 million and \$94.5 million at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

At December 31, 2017 and 2016, retail repurchase agreements, defined as securities sold under agreements to repurchase from our customers, totaled \$67.1 million and \$82.0 million, respectively. These retail repurchase agreements are secured overnight borrowings from customers, which may be drawn on demand. The agreements bear interest at a rate determined by us. The average rate of the outstanding agreements was 0.47% and 0.46% at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. The Company had pledged securities with an approximate market value of \$67.9 million and \$86.5 million as collateral at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Also included in securities sold under agreements to repurchase at December 31, 2016 was a \$12.5 million repurchase agreement the Company entered into with CitiGroup Global Markets, Inc. ("CGMI") effective August 9, 2007. Under the terms of the repurchase agreement, interest was payable quarterly based on a floating rate equal to the 3-month LIBOR for the first 12 months of the agreement and a fixed rate of 4.57% for the remainder of the term. The rate at

December 31, 2016 was 4.57%. The security was repurchased on August 9, 2017. The Company had pledged securities with a market value of \$13.9 million as collateral at December 31, 2016.

In 2017, 2016, and 2015, the Company did not have an average balance in any category of short-term borrowings including retail repurchase agreements, reverse repurchase agreements, federal funds purchased, or short-term FHLB advances that exceeded 30% of our stockholders' equity for such year.

- 78 -

---

## 8. SHORT-TERM FEDERAL HOME LOAN BANK ADVANCES

Short-term FHLB advances totaled \$40.0 million at December 31, 2017. There were no short-term FHLB advances outstanding at December 31, 2016. The short-term FHLB advances at December 31, 2017 consisted of two FHLB advance with a maturity of 1 month at a fixed interest rate of 1.59%.

The short-term and long-term FHLB advances at December 31, 2017 and 2016 are collateralized by a blanket lien on first mortgages and other qualifying loans totaling \$287.8 million and \$265.9 million, respectively.

As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company had \$237.8 million and \$240.9 million, respectively, of additional FHLB advances available.

## 9. LONG-TERM FEDERAL HOME LOAN BANK ADVANCES

Long-term FHLB advances totaled \$10.0 million and \$25.4 million at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Long-term FHLB advances at December 31, 2017 consisted of one advance that matures in January 2019 and bears a fixed interest rate of 1.985%.

## 10. JUNIOR SUBORDINATED DEBENTURES

A description of the junior subordinated debentures outstanding is as follows (in thousands):

| Date Issued        | Maturity Date      | Interest Rate            | Callable After     | December 31, |          |
|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|--------------|----------|
|                    |                    |                          |                    | 2017         | 2016     |
| July 31, 2001      | July 9, 2031       | 3 month LIBOR plus 3.30% | July 31, 2006      | \$5,671      | \$5,671  |
| September 20, 2004 | September 20, 2034 | 3 month LIBOR plus 2.50% | September 20, 2009 | 8,248        | 8,248    |
| October 12, 2006   | October 12, 2036   | 3 month LIBOR plus 1.85% | June 26, 2011      | 5,155        | 5,155    |
| June 21, 2007      | June 21, 2037      | 3 month LIBOR plus 1.70% | June 15, 2012      | 3,093        | 3,093    |
|                    |                    |                          |                    | \$22,167     | \$22,167 |

The trusts are considered variable-interest entities (“VIE”). The Trusts are not consolidated with the Company since the Company is not the primary beneficiary of the VIE. Accordingly, the Company does not report the securities issued by the Trusts as liabilities, and instead reports as liabilities the junior subordinated debentures issued by the Company and held by the Trusts, as these are not eliminated in the consolidation. The Trust Preferred Securities are recorded as junior subordinated debentures on the balance sheets, but subject to certain limitations qualify for Tier 1 capital for regulatory capital purposes.

## 11. COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES

At December 31, 2017, future annual minimum rental payments due under non-cancellable operating leases are as follows (in thousands):

|            |          |
|------------|----------|
| 2018       | \$1,814  |
| 2019       | 1,817    |
| 2020       | 1,819    |
| 2021       | 1,364    |
| 2022       | 544      |
| Thereafter | 5,457    |
|            | \$12,815 |



Rental expense under operating leases for 2017, 2016, and 2015 was approximately \$2.2 million, \$2.2 million, and \$2.5 million, respectively.

The Company is party to various legal proceedings arising in the ordinary course of business. In management's opinion, the ultimate resolution of these legal proceedings will not have a material adverse effect on the Company's financial position, results of operations, or cash flows.

At December 31, 2017, the Company had borrowing lines available through the Bank with the FHLB of Dallas and other correspondent banks. The Bank had approximately \$237.8 million available, subject to available collateral, under a secured line of credit with the FHLB of Dallas. Federal funds lines of credit were available through correspondent banks with approximately \$33.5 million available for overnight borrowing at December 31, 2017. Additionally, \$171.1 million in loan collateral is pledged under a Borrower-in-Custody line with the FRB-Atlanta.

## 12. INCOME TAXES

On December 22, 2017, the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act was signed into law which reduced the federal corporate income tax rate from 35 percent to 21 percent effective January 1, 2018. During the fourth quarter of 2017, the Company's net deferred tax assets were revalued at the new tax rate, and this adjustment resulted in a \$3.6 million increase to income tax expense.

The Company early adopted ASU No. 2018-02, Income Statement - Reporting Comprehensive Income (Topic 220): Reclassification of Certain Tax Effects from Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income, for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2017, which allowed a one-time reclassification of \$324,000 from accumulated other comprehensive income to retained earnings for stranded tax effects resulting from the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act.

Deferred income taxes reflect the net tax effects of temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes and the amounts used for income tax purposes. Significant components of our deferred tax assets and liabilities as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 are as follows (in thousands):

|   | 2017<br>(1) | 2016    |
|---|-------------|---------|
| Deferred tax assets:                          |             |         |
| Allowance for loan losses                     | \$5,860     | \$9,177 |
| Loss on transfer of loans to held-for-sale    | 1,266       | —       |
| Unrealized losses on securities               | 713         | 890     |
| Write-down on assets held-for-sale            | 285         | —       |
| Core deposit intangible                       | 153         | 37      |
| Deferred compensation                         | 358         | 696     |
| Other   | 667         | 640     |
| Total deferred tax assets                     | 9,302       | 11,440  |
| Deferred tax liabilities:                     |             |         |
| Premises and equipment                        | 1,589       | 3,318   |
| Goodwill                                      | 1,321       | 1,820   |
| FHLB stock dividends                          | 57          | 80      |
| Unrealized gains on cash flow hedges          | 226         | 346     |
| Prepaid expenses                              | 220         | 306     |
| Purchase accounting adjustments on securities | 392         | 753     |
| Other   | 105         | 245     |
| Total deferred tax liabilities                | 3,910       | 6,868   |
| Net deferred tax asset                        | \$5,392     | \$4,572 |

(1) For 2017, the amounts presented are reflective of the 21 percent tax rate.

Based upon the level of historical taxable income and projections for future taxable income over the periods in which the deferred tax assets are deductible, the Company believes that it is more likely than not that it will realize the benefits of these deductible differences existing at December 31, 2017. Therefore, no valuation allowance is necessary at this time. The net deferred tax assets for 2017 and 2016 are included in other assets on the consolidated balance sheets.

- 80 -

---



Components of income tax (benefit) expense are as follows (in thousands):

|   | 2017      | 2016     | 2015     |
|---|-----------|----------|----------|
| Current   | \$(1,719) | \$5,439  | \$6,368  |
| Deferred benefit  | (4,474 )  | (1,582 ) | (1,785 ) |
| Write-down of net deferred tax asset resulting from the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act | 3,595     | —        | —        |
| Total income tax (benefit) expense  | \$(2,598) | \$3,857  | \$4,583  |

The provision for federal income taxes differs from the amount computed by applying the U.S. Federal income tax statutory rate of 35% on pre-tax income as follows (in thousands):

|   | December 31, |         |         |
|---|--------------|---------|---------|
|   | 2017         | 2016    | 2015    |
| Taxes calculated at statutory rate  | \$(5,026)    | \$4,654 | \$5,460 |
| Increase (decrease) resulting from:   |              |         |         |
| Tax-exempt interest, net  | (524 )       | (615 )  | (766 )  |
| Deferred compensation   | (315 )       | —       | —       |
| Write-down of net deferred tax asset resulting from the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act | 3,595        | —       | —       |
| Other   | (328 )       | (182 )  | (111 )  |
|   | \$(2,598)    | \$3,857 | \$4,583 |

The Company's federal income tax returns are open and subject to examination from the 2014 tax return year and forward. The various state income and franchise tax returns are generally open from the 2014 and later tax return years based on individual state statutes of limitation. We are not currently under examination by federal or state tax authorities for the 2014, 2015, or 2016 tax years.

### 13. EMPLOYEE BENEFITS

The Company sponsors a leveraged employee stock ownership plan ("ESOP") that covers all employees who meet minimum age and service requirements. The Company makes annual contributions to the ESOP in amounts as determined by the Board of Directors. These contributions are used to pay debt service and purchase additional shares. Certain ESOP shares are pledged as collateral for this debt. As the debt is repaid, shares are released from collateral and allocated to active employees, based on the proportion of debt service paid in the year. During 2014, the ESOP borrowed \$283,000 payable to MidSouth Bank, N.A for the purpose of purchasing additional shares of MidSouth Bancorp, Inc.'s common stock. The loan proceeds were used to purchase a total of 16,000 shares at an average price of \$17.71 per share. During 2015, the ESOP borrowed an additional \$997,000 payable to MidSouth Bank, N.A. A total of 76,526 shares at an average price of \$13.02 per share were purchased with the loan proceeds. During 2016, the ESOP borrowed an additional \$499,000 payable to MidSouth Bank, N.A. A total of 62,014 shares at an average price of \$8.05 were purchased with the loan proceeds. During 2017, all outstanding ESOP loans were consolidated into one loan that matures on August 5, 2024. The balances of the notes payable of the ESOP were \$937,000 and \$1.2 million at December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, respectively.

Because the source of the loan payments are contributions received by the ESOP from the Company, the related notes receivable is shown as a reduction of stockholders' equity. In accordance with GAAP, compensation costs relating to shares purchased are based on the fair value of shares committed to be released. The difference between the average fair market value and the cost of the shares allocated by the ESOP is recorded as an adjustment to additional paid-in capital. The unreleased shares are not considered outstanding in the computation of earnings per common share. Dividends on unreleased shares are recorded as compensation expense; dividends on allocated ESOP shares are recorded as a reduction of stockholders' equity. Dividends received on ESOP shares are allocated based on shares held for the benefit of each participant and used to purchase additional shares of stock for each participant. ESOP

compensation expense consisting of both cash contributions and shares committed to be released for 2017, 2016 and 2015 was approximately \$472,000, \$603,000 and \$720,000, respectively. ESOP shares as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 were as follows:

- 81 -

---

|  | 2017        | 2016        |
|--|-------------|-------------|
| Allocated shares                               | 597,663     | 604,385     |
| Shares released for allocation                 | 25,875      | 28,451      |
| Unreleased shares                              | 88,192      | 114,067     |
| Total ESOP shares                              | 711,730     | 746,903     |
| Fair value of unreleased shares at December 31 | \$1,169,000 | \$1,551,000 |

The Company has deferred compensation arrangements with certain officers, which will provide them a fixed benefit after retirement. During 2017 and 2016, distributions related to these agreements totaled \$13,000 and \$49,000, respectively. The Company recorded a liability of approximately \$1.4 million at December 31, 2017 and 2016 in connection with these agreements. Deferred compensation expense recognized in 2017, 2016, and 2015 was approximately \$74,000, \$60,000, and \$82,000, respectively.

The Company sponsors defined contribution post-retirement benefit agreements to provide death benefits for the designated beneficiaries of certain of the Company's executive officers. Under the agreements, split-dollar whole life insurance contracts were purchased on certain executive officers. The increase in the cash surrender value of the contracts, less the Bank's cost of funds, constitutes the Company's contribution to the agreements each year. In the event the insurance contracts fail to produce positive returns, the Company has no obligation to contribute to the agreements. During 2017, 2016, and 2015, the Company incurred expenses of \$31,000, \$2,000 and \$14,000, respectively, related to the agreements.

The Company has a 401(k) retirement plan covering substantially all employees who have been employed for 90 days and meet certain other requirements. Under this plan, employees can contribute a portion of their salary within the limits provided by the Internal Revenue Code into the plan. The Company made contributions to the plan totaling \$271,000, \$60,000 and \$60,000 in 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

#### 14. EMPLOYEE STOCK PLANS

In May of 2007, our stockholders approved the 2007 Omnibus Incentive Compensation Plan to provide incentives and awards for directors, officers, and employees. "Awards" as defined in the Plan includes, with limitations, stock options (including restricted stock options), restricted stock awards, stock appreciation rights, performance shares, stock awards and cash awards, all on a stand-alone, combination, or tandem basis. The 2007 Omnibus Incentive Compensation Plan replaces the 1997 Stock Incentive Plan, which expired February of 2007. A total of 525,000 of our common shares authorized were reserved for issuance under the Plan, of which 182,288 were available to be granted as of December 31, 2017.

Stock Options – The 188,275 options outstanding at December 31, 2017 were all issued under the 2007 Omnibus Incentive Compensation Plan and are incentive stock options with a term of ten years, vesting 20% each year on the anniversary date of the grant. The following table summarizes activity relating to stock options:

|                                  | Options   | Weighted<br>Average<br>Exercise<br>Price | Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Term | Aggregate<br>Intrinsic<br>Value |
|----------------------------------|-----------|--|---|---------------------------------|
| Outstanding at December 31, 2014 | 358,073   | \$ 14.28                                 |   |                                 |
| Granted                          | 5,000     | 13.17                                    |   |                                 |
| Exercised                        | (7,655 )  | 12.97                                    |   |                                 |
| Forfeited or expired             | (16,042 ) | 17.73                                    |   |                                 |
| Outstanding at December 31, 2015 | 339,376   | \$ 14.13                                 |   |                                 |
| Granted                          | 5,000     | 9.30                                     |   |                                 |
| Exercised                        | —         | —  |   |                                 |
| Forfeited or expired             | (45,381 ) | 15.17                                    |   |                                 |
| Outstanding at December 31, 2016 | 298,995   | \$ 13.90                                 |   |                                 |
| Granted                          | —         | —  |   |                                 |
| Exercised                        | (20,499 ) | 12.97                                    |   |                                 |
| Forfeited or expired             | (90,221 ) | 13.62                                    |   |                                 |
| Outstanding at December 31, 2017 | 188,275   | \$ 14.14                                 | 5.04  | \$ —                            |
| Exercisable at December 31, 2015 | 162,679   | \$ 13.81                                 |   |                                 |
| Exercisable at December 31, 2016 | 203,578   | 13.74                                    |   |                                 |
| Exercisable at December 31, 2017 | 176,024   | 13.92                                    | 4.84  | \$ —                            |

A summary of changes in unvested options for the period ended December 31, 2017 is as follows:

|   | Number<br>of<br>Options | Weighted<br>Average<br>Grant<br>Date<br>Fair<br>Value |
|---|-------------------------|---|
| Unvested options outstanding, beginning of year | 95,417                  | \$ 4.72   |
| Granted   | —                       | —   |
| Vested  | (39,256)                | 4.75  |
| Forfeited                                       | (35,905)                | 4.54  |
| Unvested options outstanding, end of year       | 20,256                  | \$ 4.97   |

As of December 31, 2017 there was a total of \$67,000 in unrecognized compensation cost related to nonvested stock option grants that is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of 1.3 years. The total amount of options expensed during the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 was \$58,000, \$162,000 and \$336,000, respectively.

The fair value of each option granted is estimated on the grant date using the Black-Scholes Option Pricing Model. This model requires management to make certain assumptions, including the expected life of the option, the risk free rate of interest, the expected volatility, and the expected dividend yield. The risk free rate of interest is based on the yield of a U.S. Treasury security with a similar term. The expected volatility is based on historic volatility over a term similar to the expected life of the options. The dividend yield is based on the current yield at the date of grant. The following assumptions were made in estimating the fair value of the options granted in 2016:

|                            | 2016   |
|----------------------------|--------|
| Risk free rate of interest | 1.7 %  |
| Expected volatility        | 37.4 % |
| Dividend yield             | 4.2 %  |

|  |        |
|--|--------|
| Average expected life (in years)       | 5      |
| Weighted-average grant-date fair value | \$2.14 |

- 83 -

---

The total intrinsic value of the options exercised was \$30,000 and \$10,000 for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2015, respectively. There were no options exercised during the year ended December 31, 2016.

Restricted Stock Awards – During 2017, 2016 and 2015, the Compensation Committee of the Board of Directors of the Company made restricted stock grants under the Company’s 2007 Omnibus Incentive Compensation Plan. The restricted shares of stock are subject to the terms of a Restricted Stock Grant Agreement between the Company and each recipient. Prior to vesting, the recipient will be entitled to vote the shares and receive dividends, if any, declared by the Company with respect to its common stock. Compensation expense for restricted stock is based on the fair value of the restricted stock awards at the time of the grant, which is equal to the market value of the Company’s common stock on the date of grant. The value of the restricted stock grants that are expected to vest is amortized monthly into compensation expense over the vesting period (generally three to five years).

The weighted average grant date fair value of restricted stock awards was \$13.98, \$10.97 and \$13.92 for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively. For the year ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, compensation expense of \$105,000, \$48,000 and \$19,000, respectively, was recognized related to non-vested restricted stock awards. As of December 31, 2017, there was \$635,000 of unrecognized compensation cost related to non-vested restricted stock awards granted under the plan. The unrecognized compensation cost related to restricted stock awards at December 31, 2017 is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of 4.1 years.

The following table summarizes activity relating to non-vested restricted stock awards:

|                                 | Number<br>of<br>Shares | Weighted-Average<br>Grant Date Fair<br>Value |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|--|
| Non-vested at December 31, 2014 | —                      | \$ —   |
| Granted                         | 11,250                 | 13.92  |
| Forfeited                       | —                      | —  |
| Vested                          | —                      | —  |
| Non-vested at December 31, 2015 | 11,250                 | \$ 13.92                                     |
| Granted                         | 4,439                  | 10.97  |
| Forfeited                       | (925 )                 | 13.92  |
| Vested                          | —                      | —  |
| Non-vested at December 31, 2016 | 14,764                 | \$ 13.03                                     |
| Granted                         | 48,526                 | 13.98  |
| Forfeited                       | (4,500 )               | 13.92  |
| Vested                          | (700 )                 | 13.92  |
| Non-vested at December 31, 2017 | 58,090                 | \$ 13.74                                     |

## 15. STOCKHOLDERS’ EQUITY

The payment of dividends by the Bank to the Company is restricted by various regulatory and statutory limitations. Due to the loss reported for the year ended December 31, 2017, the Bank does not have the ability to approve dividends to the Company without prior approval from the OCC. As of December 31, 2017, the Company had \$50.2 million of cash to fund general corporate obligations. For additional information regarding restrictions on our ability to pay dividends see Part II, Item 5 under the heading “Market for Registrant’s Common Equity, Related Shareholder Matters, and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities.”

In August 2011, the Company redeemed 20,000 outstanding shares of Series A Preferred Stock associated with its participation in the Treasury’s Capital Purchase Plan (“CPP”) under the Troubled Asset Relief Program at its stated value of \$1,000 per share with funds from our issuance of 32,000 shares of Series B preferred stock in connection with the

Company's participation under the U.S. Treasury's Small Business Lending Fund ("SBLF"). The additional \$12.0 million of net proceeds from the issuance was provided to the Bank as additional capital. The dividend rate on the Series B preferred stock was set at 1.00% for the fourth quarter of 2013 due to attaining the target 10% growth rate in qualified small business loans during the second quarter of 2013. On February 25, 2016, the dividend rate increased to 9% per annum, consistent with the Securities Purchase Agreement which states that the rate would increase if the funding was not repaid within 4.5 years after issuance. The Series B preferred stock is

- 84 -

---

nonvoting except for class voting rights on matters that would adversely affect the rights of the holders of the Series B preferred stock.

On December 28, 2012, the Company issued 756,511 shares of common stock and 99,971 shares of Series C Preferred Stock in connection with the PSB acquisition. The Series C Preferred Stock is entitled to the payment of noncumulative dividends, if and when declared by the Company's Board of Directors, at the rate of 4.00% per annum, payable quarterly in arrears on January 15, April 15, July 15 and October 15 of each year, beginning on April 15, 2013. The Series C Preferred Stock ranks pari passu with the existing Senior Non-Cumulative Perpetual Preferred Stock, Series B, issued in connection with the Company's participation under the Treasury's SBLF and senior to the Company's common stock. The Company may redeem the Series C Preferred Stock, subject to regulatory approval, beginning on or after the fifth anniversary of the closing date of the Merger, at a redemption price equal to the liquidation value of the Series C Preferred Stock, plus declared but unpaid dividends, if any. The Company may also redeem the Series C Preferred Stock, subject to regulatory approval, at the same redemption price prior to the fifth anniversary of the closing date in the event the Series C Preferred Stock no longer qualifies for "Tier 1 Capital" treatment by the applicable federal banking regulators. Holders may convert the Series C Preferred Stock at any time into shares of the Company's common stock at a conversion price of \$18.00 per share, subject to customary anti-dilution adjustments. In addition, the Company currently has the option to require conversion of the Series C Preferred Stock if the closing price of the Company's common stock for 20 trading days within any period of 30 consecutive trading days, exceeds 130% of the conversion price.

On June 13, 2017, the Company completed the sale of 4,583,334 shares of its common stock pursuant to an underwritten public offering, and on July 11, 2017, the Company completed the sale of an additional 516,700 shares of common stock, pursuant to the partial exercise of the option to purchase additional shares granted to the underwriter. After deducting the underwriting discount and costs associated with the capital raise, the offering resulted in net proceeds of \$57.2 million. The Company, subject to regulatory approval, intends to use \$32.0 million of the net proceeds to redeem all of the outstanding Series B Preferred Stock issued to the U.S. Treasury as a result of its participation in the SBLF and intends to use the remaining portion of the net proceeds to enhance its capital structure, to fund future organic growth, for working capital, and other general corporate purposes.

## 16. DERIVATIVES

On July 6, 2016, the Company entered into two forward interest rate swap contracts on a reverse repurchase agreement and long-term FHLB advances. The interest rate swap contracts were designated as derivative instruments in a cash flow hedge under ASC Topic 815, Derivatives and Hedging to convert forecasted variable interest payment to a fixed rate and the Company has concluded that the forecasted transactions are probable of occurring. For cash flow hedges, the effective portion of the gain or loss related to the derivative instrument is initially reported as a component of other comprehensive income and subsequently reclassified into earnings when the forecasted transaction affects earnings or when the hedge is terminated. The ineffective portion of the gain or loss is reported in earnings immediately.

No ineffectiveness related to the interest rate swaps designated as cash flow hedges was recognized in the consolidated statements of income for the year ended December 31, 2017. The accumulated net after-tax income related to the effective cash flow hedge included in accumulated other comprehensive income/loss is reflected in Note 17 - Other Comprehensive (Loss) Income.

The following table discloses the notional amounts and fair value of derivative instruments in the Company's balance sheet as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 (in thousands):

Fair Value



|  | Type of Hedge | Notional<br>Amounts |          | December |       |
|--|---------------|---------------------|----------|----------|-------|
|  |               | December 31,        |          | 31,      |       |
|  |               | 2017                | 2016     | 2017     | 2016  |
| Derivatives designated as hedging instruments: |               |                     |          |          |       |
| Interest rate swaps included in other assets   | Cash Flow     | \$27,500            | \$27,500 | \$1,078  | \$989 |

The following tables present the pre-tax effect of hedging derivative instruments on the Company's consolidated statements of operations:

- 85 -

---

|                     | Amount of Gain (Loss) Recognized in OCI on Derivative (Effective Portion) |                   | Location of Gain (Loss) Reclassified from Accumulated OCI into Income (Effective Portion) | Amount of Gain (Loss) Reclassified from Accumulated OCI into Income (Effective Portion) |                   |
|---------------------|---|-------------------|---|---|-------------------|
|                     | December 31, 2017   | December 31, 2016 |   | December 31, 2017   | December 31, 2016 |
| Interest rate swaps | 89  | 989               | Interest Expense  | 17  | —                 |

### 17. OTHER COMPREHENSIVE LOSS

The following is a summary of the tax effects allocated to each component of other comprehensive loss (in thousands):

|   | December 31, 2017 |            | 2016              |            | 2015              |            |            |  | Net of Tax Amount |
|---|-------------------|------------|-------------------|------------|-------------------|------------|------------|--|-------------------|
|   | Before Tax Amount | Tax Effect | Before Tax Amount | Tax Effect | Before Tax Amount | Tax Effect | Tax Effect |  |                   |
| Other comprehensive loss:   |                   |            |                   |            |                   |            |            |  |                   |
| Securities available-for-sale:  |                   |            |                   |            |                   |            |            |  |                   |
| Change in unrealized gain/loss during period                                  | \$(503)           | \$176      | \$(327)           | \$1,158    | \$(2,149)         | \$(2,369)  | \$829      |  | \$(1,540)         |
| Reclassification adjustment for net gains included in net income              | (347)             | 122        | (225)             | 7          | (13)              | (1,243)    | 435        |  | (808)             |
| Derivative instruments designated as cash flow hedges:                        |                   |            |                   |            |                   |            |            |  |                   |
| Change in fair value of derivative instruments designated as cash flow hedges | 106               | (37)       | 69                | (346)      | 643               | —          | —          |  | —                 |
| Reclassification adjustment for gains included in net income                  | (17)              | 6          | (11)              | —          | —                 | —          | —          |  | —                 |
| Total other comprehensive loss  | \$(761)           | \$267      | \$(494)           | \$819      | \$(1,519)         | \$(3,612)  | \$1,264    |  | \$(2,348)         |

The reclassifications out of accumulated other comprehensive income/loss into net earnings are presented below (in thousands):

| Details about Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income/Loss Components | December 31, 2017  |                                  | 2016   |                                 | 2015   |                                 |
|--|--|----------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
|  | Reclassifications Out of Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income/Loss | Statement of Earnings Line Item. | Reclassifications Out of Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income/Loss | Statement of Earnings Line Item | Reclassifications Out of Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income/Loss | Statement of Earnings Line Item |
| Unrealized gains and losses on securities available-for-sale:        |  |                                  |  |                                 |  |                                 |
|  | \$ (347)   | Gain on securities, net          | \$ (20)  | Gain on securities, net         | \$ (1,243)   | Gain on securities, net         |
|  | 122  | Income tax expense               | 7  | Income tax expense              | 435  | Income tax expense              |
|  | \$ (225)   | Net of tax                       | \$ (13)  | Net of tax                      | \$ (808)   | Net of tax                      |
| Gains on derivative instruments:                                     |  |                                  |  |                                 |  |                                 |
|  | \$ (17)  | Interest expense                 | \$ —   | Interest expense                | \$ —   | Interest expense                |
|  | 6  | Tax expense                      | —  | Tax expense                     | —  | Tax expense                     |
|  | \$ (11)  | Net of tax                       | \$ —   | Net of tax                      | \$ —   | Net of tax                      |

#### 18. NET (LOSS) EARNINGS PER COMMON SHARE

Following is a summary of the information used in the computation of (loss) earnings per common share (in thousands):

|  | December 31, |          |           |
|--|--------------|----------|-----------|
|  | 2017         | 2016     | 2015      |
| Net (loss) earnings available to common stockholders   | \$ (15,003)  | \$ 6,578 | \$ 10,330 |
| Dividends on Series C preferred stock  | —            | —        | 367       |
| Adjusted net (loss) earnings available to common stockholders  | \$ (15,003)  | \$ 6,578 | \$ 10,697 |
| Weighted average number of common shares outstanding used in computation of basic earnings per common share                                      | 14,107       | 11,263   | 11,309    |
| Effect of dilutive securities:   |              |          |           |
| Stock options  | 3            | —        | 5         |
| Preferred stock  | —            | —        | 507       |
| Weighted average number of common shares outstanding plus effect of dilutive securities used in computation of diluted earnings per common share | 14,110       | 11,263   | 11,821    |

Following is a summary of the securities that were excluded from the computation of diluted (loss) earnings per share because the effects of the shares were anti-dilutive (in thousands):

|   | December 31, |      |      |
|---|--------------|------|------|
|   | 2017         | 2016 | 2015 |
| Stock options   | 64           | 299  | 221  |
| Restricted stock  | —            | 15   | 11   |
| Shares subject to the outstanding warrant issued in connection with the CPP transaction | 104          | 104  | 104  |
| Convertible preferred stock   | 500          | 507  | —    |

## 19. FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS WITH OFF-BALANCE SHEET RISK

The Bank is party to various financial instruments with off-balance sheet risk in the normal course of business to meet the financing needs of its customers and to reduce its own exposure to fluctuations in interest rates. These financial instruments include commitments to extend credit and standby letters of credit. Those instruments involve, to varying degrees, elements of credit and interest rate risk in excess of the amounts recognized in the statements of financial condition. The contract or notional amounts of those instruments reflect the extent of the Bank's involvement in particular classes of financial instruments.

The Bank's exposure to loan loss in the event of nonperformance by the other party to the financial instrument for commitments to extend credit, standby letters of credit, and financial guarantees is represented by the contractual amount of those instruments. The Bank uses the same credit policies, including considerations of collateral requirements, in making these commitments and conditional obligations as it does for on-balance sheet instruments.

|   | Contract or<br>Notional Amount |           |
|---|--------------------------------|-----------|
|   | 2017                           | 2016      |
| Financial instruments whose contract amounts represent credit risk:<br>(in thousands) |                                |           |
| Commitments to extend credit  | \$291,459                      | \$322,788 |
| Letters of credit   | 10,088                         | 13,043    |

Commitments to extend credit are agreements to lend to a customer as long as there is no violation of any condition established in the contract. Commitments generally have fixed expiration dates or other termination clauses and may require payment of a fee. Since many of the commitments are expected to expire without being fully drawn upon, the total commitment amounts disclosed above do not necessarily represent future cash requirements. Substantially all of these commitments are at variable rates.

Commercial letters of credit and financial guarantees are conditional commitments issued by the Bank to guarantee the performance of a customer to a third party. The credit risk involved in issuing letters of credit is essentially the same as that involved in extending loan facilities to its customers. Approximately 82% and 77% of these letters of credit were secured by marketable securities, cash on deposit, or other assets at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

## 20. REGULATORY MATTERS

The Company and the Bank are subject to various regulatory capital requirements administered by the federal banking agencies. Failure to meet minimum capital requirements can initiate certain mandatory and possibly additional discretionary actions by regulators that, if undertaken, could have a direct material effect on the financial statements. Under capital adequacy guidelines, the Company and the Bank must meet specific capital guidelines that involve quantitative measures of assets, liabilities, and certain off-balance sheet items as calculated under regulatory accounting practices. The capital amounts and classification are also subject to qualitative judgments by the regulators about components, risk weightings, and other factors.

Quantitative measures established by regulation to ensure capital adequacy require the Company and the Bank to maintain minimum amounts and ratios (set forth in the table below) of common equity Tier 1 capital, Tier 1 and total capital (as defined in the regulations) to risk-weighted assets (as defined) and to average assets (as defined). In addition, the OCC has established higher individual minimum capital ratios for the Bank. Specifically, the Bank must maintain a Tier 1 leverage ratio of at least 8%, and a total risk-based capital ratio of at least 12%.

- 88 -

---

As of December 31, 2017, the most recent notifications from the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation categorized the Bank as well capitalized under the regulatory framework for prompt corrective action. To be categorized as well capitalized the Bank must maintain minimum common equity Tier I, total risk-based, Tier I risk-based, and Tier I leverage capital ratios as set forth in the table (in thousands). There are no conditions or events since those notifications that management believes has changed the Bank's category.

The Company's and the Bank's actual capital amounts and ratios are presented in the table below (in thousands):

|   | Actual                   |        | Required for<br>Minimum<br>Capital<br>Adequacy<br>Purposes |       | To be Well<br>Capitalized Under<br>Prompt Corrective<br>Action Provisions |        |
|---|--------------------------|--------|--|-------|---|--------|
|   | Amount                   | Ratio  | Amount   | Ratio | Amount  | Ratio  |
|   | As of December 31, 2017: |        |  |       |   |        |
| Common equity Tier I capital to risk-weighted assets: |                          |        |  |       |   |        |
| Company   | \$171,161                | 12.10% | \$63,678   | 4.50% | N/A   | N/A    |
| Bank  | \$183,825                | 13.00% | \$63,646   | 4.50% | \$91,933  | 6.50 % |
| Total capital to risk-weighted assets:                |                          |        |  |       |   |        |
| Company   | \$251,456                | 17.77% | \$113,205  | 8.00% | N/A   | N/A    |
| Bank  | \$201,624                | 14.26% | \$113,148  | 8.00% | \$141,435   | 10.00% |
| Tier I capital to risk-weighted assets:               |                          |        |  |       |   |        |
| Company   | \$233,648                | 16.51% | \$84,904   | 6.00% | N/A   | N/A    |
| Bank  | \$183,825                | 13.00% | \$84,861   | 6.00% | \$113,148   | 8.00 % |
| Tier I capital to average assets:                     |                          |        |  |       |   |        |
| Company   | \$233,648                | 12.53% | \$74,614   | 4.00% | N/A   | N/A    |
| Bank  | \$183,825                | 9.86 % | \$74,591   | 4.00% | \$93,239  | 5.00 % |

|   | Actual                   |        | Required for<br>Minimum<br>Capital<br>Adequacy<br>Purposes |       | To be Well<br>Capitalized Under<br>Prompt Corrective<br>Action Provisions |        |
|---|--------------------------|--------|--|-------|---|--------|
|   | Amount                   | Ratio  | Amount   | Ratio | Amount  | Ratio  |
|   | As of December 31, 2016: |        |  |       |   |        |
| Common equity Tier I capital to risk-weighted assets: |                          |        |  |       |   |        |
| Company   | \$131,091                | 8.81 % | \$66,937   | 4.50% | N/A   | N/A    |
| Bank  | \$178,587                | 12.00% | \$66,980   | 4.50% | \$96,749  | 6.50 % |
| Total capital to risk-weighted assets:                |                          |        |  |       |   |        |
| Company   | \$212,366                | 14.28% | \$118,999  | 8.00% | N/A   | N/A    |
| Bank  | \$197,265                | 13.25% | \$119,076  | 8.00% | \$148,845   | 10.00% |
| Tier I capital to risk-weighted assets:               |                          |        |  |       |   |        |
| Company   | \$193,700                | 13.02% | \$89,249   | 6.00% | N/A   | N/A    |
| Bank  | \$178,587                | 12.00% | \$89,307   | 6.00% | \$119,076   | 8.00 % |
| Tier I capital to average assets:                     |                          |        |  |       |   |        |
| Company   | \$193,700                | 10.11% | \$76,609   | 4.00% | N/A   | N/A    |
| Bank  | \$178,587                | 9.32 % | \$76,623   | 4.00% | \$95,779  | 5.00 % |

In July 2013, the Federal bank regulatory agencies issued a final rule that will revise their risk-based capital requirements and the method for calculating components of capital and of computing risk-weighted assets to make

them consistent with agreements that were reached by the Basel Committee on Banking Supervision and certain provisions of the Dodd-Frank Act. The Basel III rules became effective for the Company and the Bank on January 1, 2015 (subject to a phase-in period for certain provisions). The final rule applied to all depository institutions, top-tier bank holding companies with total consolidated assets of \$500 million

- 89 -

---

or more and top-tier savings and loan holding companies. The rule established a new common equity Tier 1 minimum capital requirement, increased the minimum capital ratios and assigned a higher risk weight to certain assets based on the risk associated with these assets. Certain provisions of the new rules will be phased in through January 1, 2019.

## 21. FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENTS AND DISCLOSURES

The Company utilizes fair value measurements to record fair value adjustments to certain assets and liabilities and to determine fair value disclosures. Securities available-for-sale and derivative instruments are recorded at fair value on a recurring basis. Additionally, from time to time, the Company may be required to record at fair value other assets on a nonrecurring basis, such as impaired loans, loans held for sale, other real estate and assets held for sale. These nonrecurring fair value adjustments typically involve the application of the lower of cost or market accounting or write-downs of individual assets. Additionally, the Company is required to disclose, but not record, the fair value of other financial instruments.

### Fair Value Hierarchy

The Company groups assets and liabilities at fair value in three levels, based on the markets in which the assets and liabilities are traded and the reliability of the assumptions used to determine fair value. These levels are:

Level 1 – Valuation is based upon quoted prices for identical instruments traded in active markets.

Level 2 – Valuation is based upon quoted prices for similar instruments in active markets, quoted prices for identical or similar instruments in markets that are not active, and model-based valuation techniques for which all significant assumptions are observable in the market.

Level 3 – Valuation is generated from model-based techniques that use at least one significant assumption not observable in the market. These unobservable assumptions reflect estimates of assumptions that market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability. Valuation techniques include use of option pricing models, discounted cash flow models and similar techniques.

Following is a description of valuation methodologies used for assets and liabilities which are either recorded or disclosed at fair value.

Cash and cash equivalents—The carrying value of cash and cash equivalents is a reasonable estimate of fair value.

Securities Available-for-Sale—Securities available-for-sale are recorded at fair value on a recurring basis. Fair value measurement is based upon quoted prices, if available. If quoted prices are not available, fair values are measured using independent pricing models or other model-based valuation techniques such as the present value of future cash flows, adjusted for the security's credit rating, prepayment assumptions and other factors such as credit loss assumptions. Level 1 securities include those traded on an active exchange, such as the New York Stock Exchange and U.S. Treasury securities that are traded by dealers or brokers in active over-the-counter market funds. Securities are classified as Level 2 within the valuation hierarchy when the Company obtains fair value measurements from an independent pricing service. The fair value measurements consider observable data that may include dealer quotes, market spreads, cash flows, the U.S. Treasury yield curve, live trading levels, trade execution data, market consensus prepayment speeds, credit information, and the bond's terms and conditions, among other things. Level 2 inputs are used to value U.S. Agency securities, mortgage-backed securities, municipal securities, single issue trust preferred securities, certain pooled trust preferred securities, and certain equity securities that are not actively traded.



**Securities Held-to-Maturity**—The fair value of securities held-to-maturity is estimated using the same measurement techniques as securities available-for-sale.

**Other investments**—The carrying value of other investments is a reasonable estimate of fair value.

**Loans Held For Sale**—Loans held for sale are carried at the lower of carrying value or fair value. Fair value is based upon quotes or bids on these loans directly from the purchaser.

**Loans**—For disclosure purposes, the fair value of fixed rate loans is estimated by discounting the future cash flows using the current rates at which similar loans would be made to borrowers with similar credit ratings. For variable rate loans, the carrying amount is a reasonable estimate of fair value. The Company does not record loans at fair value on a recurring basis. No

- 90 -

---

adjustment to fair value is taken related to illiquidity discounts. However, from time to time, a loan is considered impaired and an allowance for loan losses is established. Loans for which it is probable that payment of interest and principal will not be made in accordance with the contractual terms of the loan agreement are considered impaired. Once a loan is identified as individually impaired, management uses one of three methods to measure impairment, which, include collateral value, market value of similar debt, and discounted cash flows. Those impaired loans not requiring an allowance represent loans for which the fair value of the expected repayments or collateral exceed the recorded investments in such loans. Impaired loans where an allowance is established based on the fair value of collateral or where the loan balance has been charged down to fair value require classification in the fair value hierarchy. When the fair value of the collateral is based on an observable market price or a current appraised value, the Company records the impaired loan as nonrecurring Level 2. When an appraised value is not available or management determines the fair value of the collateral is further impaired below the appraised value and adjusts the appraisal value by taking an additional discount for market conditions and there is no observable market price, the Company records the impaired loan as nonrecurring Level 3.

For non-performing loans, collateral valuations currently in file are reviewed for acceptability in terms of timeliness and applicability. Although each determination is made based on the facts and circumstances of each credit, generally valuations are no longer considered acceptable when there has been physical deterioration of the property from when it was last appraised, or there has been a significant change in the underlying assumptions of the appraisal. If the valuation is deemed to be unacceptable, a new appraisal is ordered. New appraisals are typically received within 4-6 weeks. While awaiting new appraisals, the valuation in file is utilized, net of discounts. Discounts are derived from available relevant market data, selling costs, taxes, and insurance. Any perceived collateral deficiency utilizing the discounted value is specifically reserved (as required by ASC Topic 310) until the new appraisal is received or charged off. Thus, provisions or charge-offs are recognized in the period the credit is identified as non-performing.

The following sources are utilized to set appropriate discounts: market real estate agents, current local sales data, bank history for devaluation of similar property, Sheriff's valuations and buy/sell contracts. If a real estate agent is used to market and sell the property, values are discounted 6% for selling costs and an additional 4% for taxes, insurance and maintenance costs. Additional discounts may be applied if research from the above sources indicates a discount is appropriate given devaluation of similar property from the time of the initial valuation.

**Cash Surrender Value of Life Insurance Policies**—Fair value for life insurance cash surrender value is based on cash surrender values indicated by the insurance companies.

**Other Real Estate**—Other real estate properties are adjusted to fair value upon transfer of the loans to other real estate, and annually thereafter to insure other real estate assets are carried at the lower of carrying value or fair value. Exceptions to obtaining initial appraisals are properties where a buy/sell agreement exists for the loan value or greater, or where we have received a Sheriff's valuation for properties liquidated through a Sheriff sale. Fair value is based upon independent market prices, appraised values of the collateral or management's estimation of the value of the collateral. When the fair value of the collateral is based on an observable market price or a current appraised value, the Company records the other real estate as nonrecurring Level 2. When an appraised value is not available or management determines the fair value of the collateral is further impaired below the appraised value and adjusts the appraisal value by taking an additional discount for market conditions and there is no observable market prices, the Company records the other real estate asset as nonrecurring Level 3.

**Assets Held For Sale**—Assets held for sale are carried at the lower of carrying value or fair value. Fair value is based upon appraised values.

**Derivative Instruments**—The fair value of derivatives are determined by an independent valuation firm and are estimated using prices of financial instruments with similar characteristics. As a result, they are classified within Level 2 of the

fair value hierarchy.

Deposits—The fair value of demand deposits, savings accounts, NOW accounts, and money market deposits is the amount payable on demand at the reporting date. The fair value of fixed maturity certificates of deposit is estimated by discounting the future cash flows using the rates currently offered for deposits of similar remaining maturities. The estimated fair value does not include customer related intangibles.

Securities Sold Under Agreements to Repurchase—The fair value approximates the carrying value of repurchase agreements due to their short-term nature.

- 91 -

---

Short-term Federal Home Loan Bank advances—The fair value approximates the carrying value of short-term FHLB advances due to their short-term nature.

Long-term Federal Home Loan Bank advances—The fair value of of long-term FHLB advances is estimated using a discounted cash flow analysis that applies interest rates currently being offered on similar types of borrowings with similar terms.

Junior Subordinated Debentures—For junior subordinated debentures that bear interest on a floating basis, the carrying amount approximates fair value. For junior subordinated debentures that bear interest on a fixed rate basis, the fair value is estimated using a discounted cash flow analysis that applies interest rates currently being offered on similar types of borrowings.

Commitments to Extend Credit, Standby Letters of Credit and Credit Card Guarantees—Because commitments to extend credit and standby letters of credit are generally short-term and made using variable rates, the carrying value and estimated fair value associated with these instruments are immaterial.

#### Assets Recorded at Fair Value

Below is a table that presents information about certain assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis (in thousands):

| Description                                      | Assets /<br>Liabilities<br>Measured<br>at Fair<br>Value at<br>December<br>31, 2017 | Fair Value<br>Measurements<br>at December 31, 2017 |           |            |
|--|--|--|-----------|------------|
|  |  | Level<br>1   | Level 2   | Level<br>3 |
| Available-for-sale securities:                   |  |  |           |            |
| Obligations of state and political subdivisions  | \$ 22,809  | \$—  | \$22,809  | \$ —       |
| GSE mortgage-backed securities                   | 59,124   | —  | 59,124    | —          |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: residential | 198,155  | —  | 198,155   | —          |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: commercial  | 2,240  | —  | 2,240     | —          |
| Mutual funds                                     | 2,061  | 2,061  | —         | —          |
| Corporate debt securities                        | 24,802   | —  | 24,802    | —          |
| Total available-for-sale securities              | \$ 309,191   | \$2,061  | \$307,130 | \$ —       |
| Derivative instruments                           | \$ 1,078   | \$—  | \$1,078   | \$ —       |

| Description                                      | Assets /<br>Liabilities<br>Measured<br>at Fair<br>Value at<br>December<br>31, 2016 | Fair Value<br>Measurements<br>at December 31, 2016 |          |            |
|--|--|--|----------|------------|
|  |  | Level<br>1   | Level 2  | Level<br>3 |
| Available-for-sale securities:                   |  |  |          |            |
| Obligations of state and political subdivisions  | \$ 29,141  | \$—  | \$29,141 | \$ —       |
| GSE mortgage-backed securities                   | 73,578   | —  | 73,578   | —          |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: residential | 220,202  | —  | 220,202  | —          |
| Collateralized mortgage obligations: commercial  | 3,082  | —  | 3,082    | —          |

Edgar Filing: MIDSOUTH BANCORP INC - Form 10-K

|                                     |            |          |            |      |
|-------------------------------------|------------|----------|------------|------|
| Mutual funds                        | 2,059      | 2,059    | —          | —    |
| Corporate debt securities           | 13,811     | —        | 13,811     | —    |
| Total available-for-sale securities | \$ 341,873 | \$ 2,059 | \$ 339,814 | \$ — |
| Derivative instruments              | \$ 989     | \$ —     | \$ 989     | \$ — |

Certain assets and liabilities are measured at fair value on a nonrecurring basis and therefore are not included in the table above. Impaired loans are level 2 assets measured using appraisals from external parties of the collateral less any prior liens. Loans held for sale are level 2 assets measured using quotes or bids from the purchaser of the loans. Other real estate owned are also level 2 assets measured using appraisals from external parties. Assets held for sale are considered level 2 assets when measured using appraisals from third parties.

- 92 -

---

Assets measured at fair value on a nonrecurring basis are as follows (in thousands):

| Description          | Assets /<br>Liabilities<br>Measured<br>at Fair<br>Value at<br>December<br>31, 2017 | Fair Value<br>Measurements<br>at December 31,<br>2017 |         |            |
|----------------------|--|---|---------|------------|
|                      |  | Level 1   | Level 2 | Level 3    |
| Impaired loans       | \$ 10,227  | \$—   | —       | —\$ 10,227 |
| Loans held for sale  | 15,737   | —   | 15,737  | —          |
| Other real estate    | 2,001  | —   | —       | 2,001      |
| Assets held for sale | 3,572  | —   | 3,572   | —          |

| Description       | Assets /<br>Liabilities<br>Measured<br>at Fair<br>Value at<br>December<br>31, 2016 | Fair Value<br>Measurements<br>at December 31,<br>2016 |         |            |
|-------------------|--|---|---------|------------|
|                   |  | Level 1   | Level 2 | Level 3    |
| Impaired loans    | \$ 26,956  | \$—   | —       | —\$ 26,956 |
| Other real estate | 2,175  | —   | —       | 2,175      |

The following table shows the significant unobservable inputs used in the fair value measurement of Level 3 assets:

| Description       | Fair Value<br>at<br>December<br>31, 2017 | Technique              | Unobservable Inputs                              |
|-------------------|--|------------------------|--|
|                   |  |                        |  |
| Other real estate | 2,001                                    | Third party appraisals | Collateral discounts and estimated costs to sell |

| Description       | Fair Value<br>at<br>December<br>31, 2016 | Technique              | Unobservable Inputs                              |
|-------------------|--|------------------------|--|
|                   |  |                        |  |
| Other real estate | 2,175                                    | Third party appraisals | Collateral discounts and estimated costs to sell |

#### Limitations

Fair value estimates are made at a specific point in time, based on relevant market information and information about the financial instrument. These estimates do not reflect any premium or discount that could result from offering for sale at one time the Company's entire holdings of a particular financial instrument. Because no market exists for a significant portion of the Company's financial instruments, fair value estimates are based on many judgments. These estimates are subjective in nature and involve uncertainties and matters of significant judgment and therefore cannot be determined with precision. Changes in assumptions could significantly affect the estimates.

Fair value estimates are based on existing on and off-balance sheet financial instruments without attempting to estimate the value of anticipated future business and the value of assets and liabilities that are not considered financial instruments. Significant assets and liabilities that are not considered financial instruments include deferred income taxes and premises and equipment. In addition, the tax ramifications related to the realization of the unrealized gains and losses can have a significant effect on fair value estimates and have not been considered in the estimates.

- 93 -

---

The estimated fair values of our financial instruments are as follows at December 31, 2017 and 2016 (in thousands):

|   | Carrying Value | Fair Value Measurements at December 31, 2017 Using: |           |           |
|---|----------------|---|-----------|-----------|
|   |                | Level 1   | Level 2   | Level 3   |
| Financial assets:                               |                |   |           |           |
| Cash and cash equivalents                       | \$ 152,964     | \$ 152,964  | \$ —      | —         |
| Securities available-for-sale                   | 309,191        | 2,061   | 307,130   | —         |
| Securities held-to-maturity                     | 81,052         | —   | 80,920    | —         |
| Other investments                               | 12,214         | 12,214  | —         | —         |
| Loans, net                                      | 1,156,538      | —   | —         | 1,160,614 |
| Cash surrender value of life insurance policies | 14,896         | —   | 14,896    | —         |
| Derivative asset                                | 1,078          | —   | 1,078     | —         |
| Financial liabilities:                          |                |   |           |           |
| Non-interest-bearing deposits                   | 416,547        | —   | 416,547   | —         |
| Interest-bearing deposits                       | 1,063,142      | —   | 881,139   | 179,910   |
| Securities sold under agreements to repurchase  | 67,133         | 67,133  | —         | —         |
| Short-term Federal Home Loan Bank advances      | 40,000         | 40,000  | —         | —         |
| Long-term Federal Home Loan Bank advances       | 10,021         | —   | 10,011    | —         |
| Junior subordinated debentures                  | 22,167         | —   | 22,167    | —         |
|   |                | Fair Value Measurements at December 31, 2016 Using: |           |           |
|   | Carrying Value | Level 1   | Level 2   | Level 3   |
| Financial assets:                               |                |   |           |           |
| Cash and cash equivalents                       | \$ 82,228      | \$ 82,228   | \$ —      | —         |
| Securities available-for-sale                   | 341,873        | 2,059   | 326,003   | —         |
| Securities held-to-maturity                     | 98,211         | —   | 98,261    | —         |
| Other investments                               | 11,355         | 11,355  | —         | —         |
| Loans, net                                      | 1,259,710      | —   | —         | 1,263,089 |
| Cash surrender value of life insurance policies | 14,335         | —   | 14,335    | —         |
| Derivative asset                                | 989            | —   | 989       | —         |
| Financial liabilities:                          |                |   |           |           |
| Non-interest-bearing deposits                   | 414,921        | —   | 414,921   | —         |
| Interest-bearing deposits                       | 1,164,509      | —   | 1,012,633 | 150,879   |
| Securities sold under agreements to repurchase  | 94,461         | 94,461  | —         | —         |
| Long-term Federal Home Loan Bank advances       | 25,424         | —   | 25,808    | —         |
| Junior subordinated debentures                  | 22,167         | —   | 22,167    | —         |

## 22. OTHER NON-INTEREST INCOME AND EXPENSE

For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, none of the components of other noninterest income were greater than 1% of interest income and noninterest income.



Components of other noninterest expense greater than 1% of interest income and noninterest income consisted of the following for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015 (in thousands):

|                               | 2017    | 2016    | 2015    |
|-------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|
| Professional fees             | \$6,204 | \$1,855 | \$1,560 |
| FDIC fees                     | 1,572   | 1,601   | 1,513   |
| Marketing expenses            | 1,197   | 1,523   | 1,564   |
| Corporate development expense | 1,016   | 1,572   | 1,531   |
| Data processing               | 2,640   | 1,963   | 1,888   |
| Printing and supplies         | 509     | 760     | 923     |
| Amortization of intangibles   | 1,106   | 1,107   | 1,106   |

### 23. SUBSEQUENT EVENTS

Subsequent to December 31, 2017, the Company completed the sale of the majority of loans classified as held for sale at December 31, 2017. Total proceeds from the transaction were \$14.0 million, and there was no material change to the loss recorded during 2017. The remaining loans classified as held for sale at December 31, 2017 are expected to generate additional proceeds up to \$1.3 million and will close once various closing conditions are met.

## 24. CONDENSED FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF PARENT COMPANY

Summarized financial information for MidSouth Bancorp, Inc. (parent company only) follows:

## Balance Sheets

December 31, 2017 and 2016

(in thousands)

|   | 2017       | 2016       |
|---|------------|------------|
| Assets                                      |            |            |
| Cash and interest-bearing deposits in banks | \$ 50,174  | \$ 16,705  |
| Other assets                                | 2,371      | 2,058      |
| Investment in and advances to subsidiaries  | 225,634    | 220,906    |
| Total assets                                | \$ 278,179 | \$ 239,669 |

## Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity

## Liabilities:

|  |            |            |
|--|------------|------------|
| Dividends payable                          | \$ 975     | \$ 1,835   |
| Junior subordinated debentures             | 22,167     | 22,167     |
| ESOP obligation                            | 937        | 1,233      |
| Other                                      | 85         | 58         |
| Total liabilities                          | 24,164     | 25,293     |
| Stockholders' equity                       | 254,015    | 214,376    |
| Total liabilities and stockholders' equity | \$ 278,179 | \$ 239,669 |

## Statements of Operations

For the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015

(in thousands)

|  | 2017       | 2016     | 2015      |
|--|------------|----------|-----------|
| Revenue:   |            |          |           |
| Dividends from Bank  | \$ 4,000   | \$ 9,000 | \$ 9,000  |
| Gain on sale of securities   | —          | —        | 1,125     |
| Rental and other income  | 140        | 57       | 57        |
|  | 4,140      | 9,057    | 10,182    |
| Expenses:  |            |          |           |
| Interest on short- and long-term debt  | 830        | 704      | 613       |
| Professional fees  | 235        | 236      | 253       |
| Other expenses   | 854        | 785      | 733       |
|  | 1,919      | 1,725    | 1,599     |
| Income before equity in undistributed earnings/loss of subsidiaries and income taxes | 2,221      | 7,332    | 8,583     |
| Equity in undistributed (loss) earnings of subsidiaries                              | (14,802 )  | 1,529    | 2,317     |
| Income tax benefit   | 820        | 578      | 117       |
| Net (loss) earnings  | \$(11,761) | \$ 9,439 | \$ 11,017 |

## Statements of Cash Flows

For the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015

(in thousands)

|  | 2017       | 2016     | 2015     |
|--|------------|----------|----------|
| Cash flows from operating activities:  |            |          |          |
| Net (loss) earnings  | \$(11,761) | \$9,439  | \$11,017 |
| Adjustments to reconcile net (loss) earnings to net cash provided by operating activities: |            |          |          |
| Undistributed (loss) earnings of subsidiaries  | 14,802     | (1,529 ) | (2,317 ) |
| Gain on sale of securities available-for-sale  | —          | —        | (1,125 ) |
| Other, net   | (246 )     | 73       | 528      |
| Net cash provided by operating activities  | 2,795      | 7,983    | 8,103    |
| Cash flows from investing activities:  |            |          |          |
| Proceeds from sale of securities available-for-sale  | —          | —        | 1,392    |
| Payments for investments in and advances to subsidiaries                                   | (20,000 )  | —        | —        |
| Repayment of investments in and advance to subsidiaries                                    | 203        | —        | —        |
| Other, net   | —          | —        | (83 )    |
| Net cash (used in) provided by investing activities  | (19,797 )  | —        | 1,309    |
| Cash flows from financing activities:  |            |          |          |
| Proceeds from exercise of stock options  | 266        | —        | 99       |
| Proceeds from issuance of common stock   | 57,834     | —        | —        |
| Payment of preferred dividends   | (3,242 )   | (2,221 ) | (689 )   |
| Stock offering expenses  | (683 )     | —        | —        |
| Payment of common dividends  | (3,704 )   | (4,095 ) | (4,086 ) |
| Other, net   | —          | 243      | 607      |
| Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities  | 50,471     | (6,073 ) | (4,069 ) |
| Net change in cash and cash equivalents  | 33,469     | 1,910    | 5,343    |
| Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of year   | 16,705     | 14,795   | 9,452    |
| Cash and cash equivalents at end of year   | \$50,174   | \$16,705 | \$14,795 |

- 97 -

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

To the Stockholders and the Board of Directors of MidSouth Bancorp, Inc.

Opinions on the Financial Statements and Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of Midsouth Bancorp, Inc. and subsidiaries (the "Company") as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, and the related consolidated statements of operations, other comprehensive (loss) income, stockholders' equity and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2017, and the related notes (collectively, the financial statements). We also have audited the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017, based on criteria established in Internal Control - Integrated Framework issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission in 2013.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 2017, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. Also in our opinion, the Company maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017, based on criteria established in Internal Control - Integrated Framework issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission in 2013.

Basis for Opinions

The Company's management is responsible for these financial statements, for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting, and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting, included in the accompanying Report of Management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's financial statements and an opinion on the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB) and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audits to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud, and whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects.

Our audits of the financial statements included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. Our audit of internal control over financial reporting included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, assessing the risk that a material weakness exists, and testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control based on the assessed risk. Our audits also included performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinions.

#### Definition and Limitations of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

We have served as the Company's auditor since 2005.

Atlanta, Georgia  
March 16, 2018

## Selected Quarterly Financial Data (unaudited)

(Dollars in thousands, except per share data)

|  | 2017       |            |            |            |
|--|------------|------------|------------|------------|
|  | IV         | III        | II         | I          |
| Interest income                                      | \$20,955   | \$ 20,379  | \$ 19,758  | \$ 19,531  |
| Interest expense                                     | 1,483      | 1,566      | 1,512      | 1,465      |
| Net interest income                                  | 19,472     | 18,813     | 18,246     | 18,066     |
| Provision for loan losses                            | 10,600     | 4,300      | 12,500     | 2,800      |
| Net interest income after provision for loan losses  | 8,872      | 14,513     | 5,746      | 15,266     |
| Gain on sale of investments, net                     | —          | 338        | 3          | 6          |
| Other noninterest income                             | 6,028      | 5,148      | 5,220      | 5,038      |
| Noninterest expense                                  | 25,944     | 17,759     | 19,604     | 17,230     |
| (Loss) earnings before income taxes                  | (11,044 )  | 2,240      | (8,635 )   | 3,080      |
| Income tax (benefit) expense                         | (540 )     | 574        | (3,221 )   | 589        |
| Net (loss) earnings                                  | (10,504 )  | 1,666      | (5,414 )   | 2,491      |
| Dividends on preferred stock                         | 810        | 810        | 811        | 811        |
| Net (loss) earnings available to common stockholders | \$(11,314) | \$ 856     | \$(6,225 ) | \$ 1,680   |
| (Loss) earnings per common share - basic             | \$(0.69 )  | \$ 0.05    | \$(0.51 )  | \$ 0.15    |
| (Loss) earnings per common share - diluted           | \$(0.69 )  | \$ 0.05    | \$(0.51 )  | \$ 0.15    |
| Market price of common stock                         |            |            |            |            |
| High   | \$ 14.00   | \$ 12.35   | \$ 15.53   | \$ 15.30   |
| Low  | \$ 12.05   | \$ 11.09   | \$ 11.15   | \$ 13.51   |
| Close  | \$ 13.25   | \$ 12.05   | \$ 11.75   | \$ 15.30   |
| Average shares outstanding - basic                   | 16,460,124 | 16,395,317 | 12,227,456 | 11,264,394 |
| Average shares outstanding - diluted                 | 16,462,550 | 16,395,740 | 12,237,299 | 11,282,491 |

|   | 2016       |            |            |            |
|---|------------|------------|------------|------------|
|   | IV         | III        | II         | I          |
| Interest income                                     | \$19,983   | \$ 19,953  | \$ 19,388  | \$ 19,804  |
| Interest expense                                    | 1,459      | 1,414      | 1,397      | 1,420      |
| Net interest income                                 | 18,524     | 18,539     | 17,991     | 18,384     |
| Provision for loan losses                           | 2,600      | 2,900      | 2,300      | 2,800      |
| Net interest income after provision for loan losses | 15,924     | 15,639     | 15,691     | 15,584     |
| Gain on sale of investments, net                    | —          | —          | 20         | —          |
| Other noninterest income                            | 4,782      | 4,866      | 4,853      | 4,487      |
| Noninterest expense                                 | 17,636     | 17,114     | 17,041     | 16,759     |
| Earnings before income taxes                        | 3,070      | 3,391      | 3,523      | 3,312      |
| Income tax expense                                  | 871        | 993        | 1,030      | 963        |
| Net earnings  | 2,199      | 2,398      | 2,493      | 2,349      |
| Dividends on preferred stock                        | 812        | 811        | 811        | 427        |
| Net earnings available to common stockholders       | \$1,387    | \$ 1,587   | \$ 1,682   | \$ 1,922   |
| <br>  |            |            |            |            |
| Earnings per common share - basic                   | \$0.12     | \$ 0.14    | \$ 0.15    | \$ 0.17    |
| Earnings per common share - diluted                 | \$0.12     | \$ 0.14    | \$ 0.15    | \$ 0.17    |
| Market price of common stock                        |            |            |            |            |
| High  | \$14.50    | \$ 11.08   | \$ 11.13   | \$ 9.45    |
| Low   | \$9.95     | \$ 9.46    | \$ 7.37    | \$ 6.51    |
| Close   | \$13.60    | \$ 10.40   | \$ 10.04   | \$ 7.63    |
| Average shares outstanding - basic                  | 11,271,948 | 11,262,282 | 11,255,042 | 11,261,644 |
| Average shares outstanding - diluted                | 11,273,302 | 11,262,710 | 11,255,178 | 11,261,644 |

Item 9 – Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure

Not applicable.

Item 9A – Controls and Procedures

The Company's Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer have evaluated the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures (as such term is defined in Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"). As of the end of the period covered by this Annual Report on Form 10-K, the Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer have concluded that such disclosure controls and procedures are effective to ensure that information required to be disclosed by the Company in reports that it submits under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized, and reported within the time periods specified in the Securities and Exchange Commission rules and forms.

During the fourth quarter of 2017, there were no significant changes in the Company's internal control over financial reporting that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to affect, the Company's internal control over financial reporting.

Management's Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

The management of MidSouth Bancorp, Inc. is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting. The Company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed under the supervision of the Company's Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of the Company's financial statements for external purposes in accordance with the accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. Internal control over financial reporting is defined in Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f) promulgated under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

The Company's internal control systems are designed to ensure that transactions are properly authorized and recorded in the financial records and to safeguard assets from material loss or misuse. Such assurance cannot be absolute because of inherent limitations in any internal control system.

Management assessed the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017 based on the criteria for effective internal control established in Internal Control – Integrated Framework issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission in 2013. Based on the assessment, management determined that the Company maintained effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017.

Our independent registered public accountants have issued an audit report on the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Their report is included on pages 98-99 in this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

Item 9B – Other Information

Not applicable.



### PART III

#### Item 10 - Directors, Executive Officers, and Corporate Governance

The information set forth under the heading “Executive Officers of the Registrant” in Part I of this Annual Report on Form 10-K, is incorporated herein by reference.

The information set forth under the headings “Item 1. Election of Directors,” “Corporate Governance – Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance,” “Corporate Governance – Code of Ethics,” and “Corporate Governance – Standing Board Committees” in the Company’s Proxy Statement for the 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders is incorporated herein by reference.

The Company has adopted a code of ethics that applies to its principal executive officer, principal financial officer and principal accounting officer. This code of ethics (which is entitled “Code of Ethics”) and the Company’s corporate governance principles are posted on the Investor Relations page of Company’s website at <http://www.midsouthbank.com>. The Company intends to satisfy disclosure requirements regarding amendments to or waivers from its code of ethics by posting such information on this website. The charters of the Audit Committee, Compensation Committee, Executive Committee and the Corporate Governance and Nominating Committee of the Company’s Board of Directors are available on the Company’s website as well. This information is also available in print free of charge to any person who requests it.

#### Item 11 - Executive Compensation

The information set forth under the headings “Compensation Discussion and Analysis,” “CEO Pay Ratio Disclosure,” “Summary Compensation Table,” “Grants of Plan-Based Awards,” “Outstanding Equity Awards at Fiscal Year-End,” “Options Exercised and Stock Vested,” “Pension Benefits,” “Nonqualified Deferred Compensation,” “Potential Payments Upon Termination or Change of Control,” “Outside Director Compensation,” “Corporate Governance – Compensation Committee Interlocks and Insider Participation,” and “Compensation Committee Report” in the Company’s Proxy Statement for the 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders is incorporated herein by reference.

#### Item 12 - Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Shareholder Matters

The information set forth under the headings “Securities Authorized for Issuance under Equity Compensation Plans” in this Annual Report on Form 10-K, is incorporated by reference to the sections entitled “Security Ownership of Management and Certain Beneficial Owners – Security Ownership of Management” and “Security Ownership of Management and Certain Beneficial Owners – Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners” in the Company’s Proxy Statement for the 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders is incorporated herein by reference.

#### Securities Authorized for Issuance under Equity Compensation Plans

As of December 31, 2017, the Company had outstanding stock options and restricted stock granted under our incentive compensation plans, which were approved by the Company’s stockholders. Provided below is information regarding the Company’s equity compensation plans under which the Company’s equity securities are authorized for issuance as of December 31, 2017, subject to the Company’s available authorized shares.

| Plan Category  | Number of securities to be issued upon exercise of outstanding options, warrants, and rights (a) | Weighted-average exercise price of outstanding options, warrants, and rights (b) | Number of securities remaining available for future issuance under equity compensation plans (excluding securities reflected in column (a)) (c) |
|--|--|--|---|
| Equity compensation plans approved by security holders     | 188,275  | \$ 14.14   | 182,288   |
| Equity compensation plans not approved by security holders | —  | —  | —   |
| Total  | 188,275  | \$ 14.14   | 182,288   |

#### Item 13 - Certain Relationships and Related Transactions and Director Independence

The information set forth under the headings “Certain Relationships and Related Transactions” and “Corporate Governance – Board Independence” in the Company’s Proxy Statement for the 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders is incorporated herein by reference.

#### Item 14 – Principal Accounting Fees and Services

The information set forth under the heading “Relationship with Independent Registered Public Accountants” in the Company’s Proxy Statement for the 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders is incorporated herein by reference.

#### Item 15 - Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules

The following documents are filed as a part of this report:

(a)(1) The following consolidated financial statements and supplementary data of the Company are included in Part II of this Form 10-K:

Consolidated Balance Sheets – December 31, 2017 and 2016

Consolidated Statements of Earnings – Years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015

Consolidated Statements of Changes in Stockholders’ Equity – Years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015

Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows – Years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

Selected Quarterly Financial Data

(a)(2) All schedules have been outlined because the information required is included in the financial statements or notes or have been omitted because they are not applicable or not required.

| Exhibit No. | Description |
|-------------|-------------|
|-------------|-------------|

3.1 Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation of MidSouth Bancorp, Inc. (restated solely for purposes of Item 601(b)(3) of Regulation S-K) (filed as Exhibit 3.1 to the Company's annual report on Form 10-K for the Year Ended December 31, 2012, and incorporated herein by reference)

- 104 -

---

- 3.2 Amended and Restated By-laws of MidSouth Bancorp, Inc. effective as of September 26, 2012 (restated solely for purposes of Item 601(b)(3) of Regulation S-K) (filed as Exhibit 3.3 to MidSouth's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2012 and incorporated herein by reference).
- 4.1 Specimen Common Stock Certificate. (filed as Exhibit 4.1 to MidSouth's Registration Statement (No. 333-163361) on Form S-1 filed November 25, 2009 and incorporated herein by reference).
- 4.2 Warrant to Purchase Shares of Common Stock of MidSouth Bancorp, Inc. (filed as Exhibit 3.2 to Form 8-K filed January 14, 2009 and incorporated herein by reference).
- 10.1 MidSouth National Bank Lease Agreement with Southwest Bank Building Limited Partnership (filed as Exhibit 10.7 to the Company's annual report on Form 10-K for the Year Ended December 31, 1992, and incorporated herein by reference).
- 10.2 First Amendment to Lease between MBL Life Assurance Corporation, successor in interest to Southwest Bank Building Limited Partnership in Commendam, and MidSouth National Bank (filed as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's annual report on Form 10-KSB for the year ended December 31, 1994, and incorporated herein by reference).
- 10.3+ Amended and Restated Deferred Compensation Plan and Trust effective dated December 17, 2008 (filed as Exhibit 10.3 to MidSouth's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2008 and incorporated herein by reference).
- 10.4+ MidSouth Bancorp, Inc. 2007 Omnibus Incentive Compensation Plan, as amended and restated effective May 23, 2012 (filed as Exhibit 10.1 to Form 8-K filed May 25, 2012 and incorporated herein by reference).
- 10.5+ Form of Incentive Stock Option Agreement under the 2007 Omnibus Incentive Compensation Plan (filed as Exhibit 10.2 to Form 8-K filed May 25, 2012 and incorporated herein by reference).
- 10.6+ Form of Restricted Stock Award Agreement (filed as Exhibit 10.1 to the Form 10-Q filed November 6, 2015 and incorporated herein by reference).
- 10.7 Small Business Lending Fund Securities Purchase Agreement, dated August 25, 2011, between MidSouth Bancorp, Inc. and the Secretary of the Treasury (filed as Exhibit 10.1 to the Form 8-K filed on August 29, 2011 and incorporated herein by reference).
- 10.8+ MidSouth Bancorp, Inc. 2017 Annual Incentive Compensation Plan (filed as Exhibit 10.1 to MidSouth's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on May 8, 2017 and incorporated herein by reference).
- 10.9+ Executive Indexed Salary Continuation Agreement between MidSouth Bancorp, Inc. and C.R. Cloutier (filed as Exhibit 10.9 to the Form 10-K filed March 13, 2015 and incorporated herein by reference).
- 10.10 Formal Agreement by and between MidSouth, N.A. and the Comptroller of the Currency dated July 19, 2017 (filed as Exhibit 10.1 to MidSouth's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on July 25, 2017 and incorporated herein by reference).
- 10.11+ Change in Control Agreement between MidSouth Bancorp, Inc. and Erin DeWitt. (filed as Exhibit 10.2 to MidSouth's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 31, 2017 and incorporated herein by reference).

10.12+ Change in Control Agreement between MidSouth Bancorp, Inc. and Lorraine D. Miller (filed as Exhibit 10.3 to MidSouth's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 31, 2017 and incorporated herein by reference).

10.13+ Form of Performance-Based Restricted Stock Unit Grant Agreement (filed as Exhibit 10.2 to MidSouth's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on May 8, 2017 and incorporated herein by reference).

- 105 -

---

21 Subsidiaries of the Registrant\*

23.1 Consent of Porter Keadle Moore, LLC\*

31.1 Certification of Chief Executive Officer pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) and Rule 15d-14(a) of the Securities Exchange Act, as amended \*

31.2 Certification of Chief Financial Officer pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) and Rule 15d-14(a) of the Securities Exchange Act, as amended \*

32.1 Certification by the Company's Chief Executive Officer pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002\*

32.2 Certification by the Company's Chief Financial Officer pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002\*

101 The following financial information from the Registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017, formatted in Extensible Business Reporting Language ("XBRL"): (i) Consolidated Statements of Operations, (ii) Consolidated Balance Sheets, (iii) Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity, (iv) Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows and (v) Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

+Management contract or compensatory plan or arrangement

\*Included herewith

Agreements with respect to certain of the Company's long-term debt are not filed as Exhibits hereto pursuant to Item 601(b)(4)(iii) of Regulation S-K inasmuch as the debt authorized under any such agreement does not exceed 10% of the Company's total assets on a consolidated basis. The Company agrees to furnish a copy of each such agreement to the Securities & Exchange Commission upon request.

Item 16 - Form 10-K Summary

Not applicable.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

MIDSOUTH BANCORP, INC.  
Registrant

By: /s/ James R. McLemore  
James R. McLemore  
President and Chief Executive Officer

Date: March 16, 2018

Edgar Filing: MIDSOUTH BANCORP INC - Form 10-K

| Signatures                                     | Title   | Date           |
|--|---|----------------|
| /s/ James R. McLemore<br>James R. McLemore     | Principal Executive Officer,<br>President, and Director                                   | March 16, 2018 |
| /s/ Lorraine D. Miller<br>Lorraine D. Miller   | Principal Financial Officer, Principal Accounting<br>Officer and Executive Vice President | March 16, 2018 |
| /s/ Leonard Q. Abington<br>Leonard Q. Abington | Director  | March 16, 2018 |
| /s/ James R. Davis, Jr.<br>James R. Davis, Jr. | Director  | March 16, 2018 |
| /s/ Jake Delhomme<br>Jake Delhomme             | Director  | March 16, 2018 |
| /s/ Andrew G. Hargroder<br>Andrew G. Hargroder | Director  | March 16, 2018 |
| /s/ Milton B. Kidd, III<br>Milton B. Kidd, III | Director  | March 16, 2018 |
| /s/ Timothy J. Lemoine<br>Timothy J. Lemoine   | Director  | March 16, 2018 |
| /s/ R. Glenn Pumpelly<br>R. Glenn Pumpelly     | Director  | March 16, 2018 |
| /s/ William M. Simmons<br>William M. Simmons   | Director  | March 16, 2018 |